

arV  
11200

EXERCISES IN

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

ANNEX  
LIBRARY

*F. RITCHIE*



**Cornell University Library**

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME  
FROM THE  
SAGE ENDOWMENT FUND  
THE GIFT OF  
**Henry W. Sage**  
1891

A.92752

12/5/96

Cornell University Library

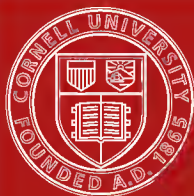
arV11200

Exercises in Latin prose composition.



3 1924 031 210 739

oii,anx



## Cornell University Library

The original of this book is in  
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in  
the United States on the use of the text.

EXERCISES  
IN  
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

F. RITCHIE, M.A.

THE BEACON, SEVERNOAKS

AUTHOR OF 'FIRST STEPS IN LATIN' 'FABULAE FACILES' ETC.

*SECOND EDITION*

LONDON  
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.  
AND NEW YORK : 15 EAST 16<sup>th</sup> STREET

1894



*All rights reserved*

~~215 D 53~~  
SJ  
A. 92752

WORKS BY F. RITCHIE, M.A.

*The Beacon, Sevenoaks.*

ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND ANALYSIS. Fcp. 8vo.  
2s. 6d.

FIRST STEPS IN LATIN. Fcp. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

FIRST STEPS IN GREEK. Fcp. 8vo. 2s.

FABULÆ FACILES. A First Latin Reader. Con-  
taining Detached Sentences and Consecutive Stories. With  
Notes and a Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

LATIN CLAUSE CONSTRUCTION. Crown 8vo.  
1s. 6d.

IMITATIVE EXERCISES IN EASY LATIN PROSE.  
Based on 'Fabulæ Faciles.' Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.  
Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

A FIRST LATIN VERSE BOOK. Crown 8vo. 2s.

A PRACTICAL GREEK METHOD FOR BEGINNERS.  
By F. RITCHIE, M.A., The Beacon, Sevenoaks; and E. H. MOORE,  
M.A., Amesbury House School, Bickley. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF GREEK VERBS. By F. RITCHIE,  
M.A., and E. H. MOORE, M.A. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

~~~~~  
London: LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO.  
New York: 15 East 16<sup>th</sup> Street.

# PREFACE



IN the compilation of a book of this kind the main difficulty lies in determining the order in which the various constructions shall be dealt with. It is obvious that a scientific arrangement, in which constructions were grouped according to their natural relationship, however valuable for purposes of reference, would be of little use in teaching Composition. In such an arrangement constructions must necessarily be classified without regard to their difficulty or the rarity of their occurrence, and the attempt to follow such an order would involve the premature introduction of difficulties and the undue postponement of some of the easiest and most ordinary constructions.

While, however, it is impossible that the practical should exactly coincide with the logical order, it is highly desirable that both pupil and teacher should be conscious of some method in the order adopted. An attempt has accordingly been made in this book to effect a compromise between the logical and the practical.

Part I. is a reprint of the English Latin Exercises in 'First Steps in Latin,' and affords practice in the Conjugation of Regular Verbs and the Declension of Nouns.

Part II. affords further practice in Accidence, and introduces the more ordinary constructions of the Simple Sentence.

Part III. deals with the Compound Sentence, following the Scheme of Analysis, but exhibiting each kind of Clause in its simpler forms only.

Part IV. goes over the same ground as Part III., but also introduces the more difficult varieties of each kind of Clause.

The Appendix contains an English Latin Syntax, *i.e.* a Syntax arranged with a view to Composition. The Syntax of the Latin Grammar, arranged as it is mainly with a view to Translation, is necessarily of little use for Composition: thus the construction of 'dignus' is properly given under the head of Ablative, but to find the rule the pupil must hunt through all the rules of Case Construction, unless he knows or suspects that 'dignus' takes an Ablative. In an English Latin Syntax the Construction would be placed under 'of.'

The various constructions are arranged in the Appendix, not in the order in which they occur in the Exercises (where graduation of difficulty must be considered), but on a plan which exhibits their natural relationship, and is more convenient for reference.

In Parts II. and III. each Exercise consists of two sections, marked respectively *A* and *B*. These sections are parallel as regards the constructions introduced, and the second section is intended for use in cases where it is necessary to go over the same ground in successive terms.

F. RITCHIE.

SEVENOAKS:

*August 1893.*



# CONTENTS

## PART I.

| EXERCISE                                        | PAGE  |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------|
| 1-4. First Conjugation, Active . . . . .        | 1-2   |
| 5. First Declension . . . . .                   | 3     |
| 6-7. Second Conjugation, Active . . . . .       | 3-4   |
| 8-9. Second Declension . . . . .                | 4-5   |
| 10-11. Third Conjugation, Active . . . . .      | 5-6   |
| 12-13. Adjectives (1st and 2nd Decl.) . . . . . | 6-7   |
| 14-15. Fourth Conjugation, Active . . . . .     | 7-8   |
| 16-18. Third Declension . . . . .               | 8-9   |
| 19. Sum . . . . .                               | 10    |
| 20-22. First Conjugation, Passive . . . . .     | 10-12 |
| 23-24. Adjectives (of 3rd Decl.) . . . . .      | 13    |
| 25-26. Second Conjugation, Passive . . . . .    | 14    |
| 27. Fourth Declension . . . . .                 | 15    |
| 28-29. Third Conjugation, Passive . . . . .     | 15-16 |
| 30. Fifth Declension . . . . .                  | 16    |
| 31-32. Fourth Conjugation, Passive . . . . .    | 17    |
| 33-34. Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .       | 17-18 |
| Vocabulary . . . . .                            | 19-20 |

## PART II.

|                                                       |       |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| 35. Transitive Verbs—' in ' and ' into '—is . . . . . | 23    |
| 36. Intransitive Verbs—' by '—hic . . . . .           | 24    |
| 37. Factitive Verbs—' with '—ille . . . . .           | 25    |
| 38. Copulative Verbs—' to '—idem . . . . .            | 26    |
| 39. ' Is '—' are '—' was '—' were ' . . . . .         | 27    |
| 41. ' Do '—' have '—' for '—capio . . . . .           | 29    |
| 42. Time. Numerals . . . . .                          | 30    |
| 43. Personal Pronouns . . . . .                       | 31    |
| 44. Reflexive " . . . . .                             | 32    |
| 45. Suus . . . . .                                    | 33    |
| 47-48. Infinitives—volō, etc. . . . .                 | 35-36 |
| 49. Participles—fero . . . . .                        | 37    |
| 50. Ipse and se—eo . . . . .                          | 38    |
| 51. Suus and ejus—fio . . . . .                       | 39    |
| 53. Et . . . et, aut . . . . aut, etc. . . . .        | 41    |
| 54-56. Questions . . . . .                            | 42-44 |
| 57-58. Commands . . . . .                             | 45-46 |

## PART III.

*THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.* (See p. 49.)

| EXERCISE |                                | PAGE  |
|----------|--------------------------------|-------|
| 60-62.   | Adjectival Clauses . . . . .   | 50-54 |
| 63-70.   | Adverbial Clauses . . . . .    | 56-70 |
| 71-73.   | Substantival Clauses . . . . . | 72-76 |
| 74-75.   | Ablative Absolute . . . . .    | 78-80 |
| 76-78.   | Gerund and Gerundive . . . . . | 82-86 |
| 79-80.   | Impersonal Verbs . . . . .     | 88-90 |

## PART IV.

*THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.*

|          |                                                    |         |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------|---------|
| 81-82.   | Participles . . . . .                              | 94-95   |
| 83.      | 'Any'—'Some' . . . . .                             | 96      |
| 84.      | Negatives . . . . .                                | 97      |
| 86.      | Suboblique . . . . .                               | 99      |
| 87.      | Se and Suus in Subordinate Clauses . . . . .       | 100     |
| 89-90.   | Adjectival Clauses . . . . .                       | 102-103 |
| 91.      | Qui + Subjunctive . . . . .                        | 104     |
| 93.      | Adverbial Clauses: Final . . . . .                 | 106     |
| 94.      | "    "    Consecutive . . . . .                    | 107     |
| 95.      | "    "    Quin, Quominus . . . . .                 | 108     |
| 96.      | "    "    Causal . . . . .                         | 109     |
| 98-99.   | "    "    Temporal . . . . .                       | 111-112 |
| 100-101. | "    "    Conditional . . . . .                    | 113-114 |
| 102.     | "    "    Concessive . . . . .                     | 115     |
| 103.     | "    "    Comparative . . . . .                    | 116     |
| 105-106. | Substantival Clauses: Indirect Statement . . . . . | 118-119 |
| 107.     | "    "    "    Question . . . . .                  | 120     |
| 108.     | "    "    "    Command . . . . .                   | 121     |
| 110.     | Suboblique . . . . .                               | 123     |
| 111-115. | Oratio Obliqua . . . . .                           | 124-132 |

## APPENDIX I.

*THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.*

|        |                                               |     |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| §1.    | Forms of the Sentence . . . . .               | 135 |
| §2.    | Subject . . . . .                             | 135 |
| §3-5.  | Transit. Intr. Fact. and Copulative . . . . . | 135 |
| §6-10. | Verbs governing Genit. Dat. Abl. . . . .      | 137 |
| §11.   | Complement (Dative of) . . . . .              | 138 |
| §14.   | Adjectival Qualification . . . . .            | 139 |
| §16.   | Adverbial " . . . . .                         | 140 |

|                                                            | PAGE |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| §20. Participles . . . . .                                 | 140  |
| §21-24. Ablative Absolute . . . . .                        | 141  |
| §25-29. Gerund and Gerundive . . . . .                     | 142  |
| §30-32. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .                         | 144  |
| §33. 'May,' 'Might,' 'Should,' etc. . . . .                | 145  |
| §34-36. Time, Space, and Place . . . . .                   | 146  |
| §37. 'At' . . . . .                                        | 148  |
| §38. 'By' . . . . .                                        | 148  |
| §39-40. 'For' . . . . .                                    | 149  |
| §41. 'From' . . . . .                                      | 151  |
| §42-43. 'In,' 'Instead of' . . . . .                       | 152  |
| §44-45. 'Of' . . . . .                                     | 153  |
| §46. 'On' . . . . .                                        | 155  |
| §47. 'To' . . . . .                                        | 156  |
| §48-49. 'With,' 'Without' . . . . .                        | 157  |
| §50-51. 'Some,' 'Any' . . . . .                            | 158  |
| §52. 'Self' (Se and ipse), 'His' (Suus and ejus) . . . . . | 159  |
| §54-55. Negatives . . . . .                                | 160  |
| §56-57. Commands . . . . .                                 | 161  |
| §58-60. Questions . . . . .                                | 162  |

---

APPENDIX II.

*THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.*

|                                                   |   |                    |     |
|---------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------|-----|
| §61-76. Substantival Clauses                      | } | see Scheme p. 163. |     |
| §77-104. Adverbial Clauses                        |   |                    |     |
| §105-119. Adjectival Clauses                      |   |                    |     |
| §120-121. Participial Phrases = Clauses . . . . . |   |                    | 189 |
| §122-133. Oratio Obliqua . . . . .                |   |                    | 190 |
| VOCABULARY . . . . .                              |   |                    | 199 |
| INDEX OF SUBJECTS . . . . .                       |   |                    | 219 |



## PART I.

### *Exercise 1.*

#### FIRST CONJUGATION, A-VERBS. ACTIVE VOICE.

##### *Present Tense.*

*sing, canto; fight, pugno; dance, salto; call, voco; not, non.*

N.B.—*Amo = I love, or I am loving, or I do love.*

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. They sing.         | 11. He does not dance.   |
| 2. We fight.          | 12. I am calling.        |
| 3. You dance.         | 13. You are not singing. |
| 4. He calls.          | 14. They fight.          |
| 5. Thou singest.      | 15. Thou dost call.      |
| 6. I do not fight.    | 16. He is fighting.      |
| 7. He is dancing.     | 17. Thou dancest.        |
| 8. They are calling.  | 18. We do not call.      |
| 9. We do not sing.    | 19. They dance.          |
| 10. You are fighting. | 20. He does not fight.   |

### *Exercise 2.*

#### FIRST CONJUGATION, A-VERBS. ACTIVE VOICE.

##### *Imperfect and Future Simple Tenses.*

*praise, laudo; ask, rogo.*

- |                        |                                         |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. We shall fight.     | 11. They were asking.                   |
| 2. He was calling.     | 12. You ( <i>sing.</i> ) will praise.   |
| 3. They will praise.   | 13. He was not calling.                 |
| 4. Thou dost fight.    | 14. He is praising.                     |
| 5. I shall ask.        | 15. You ( <i>sing.</i> ) were fighting. |
| 6. They were dancing.  | 16. We do not dance.                    |
| 7. We are calling.     | 17. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) were calling.    |
| 8. He calls.           | 18. We were praising.                   |
| 9. They will call.     | 19. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) will sing.       |
| 10. He does not fight. | 20. He is dancing.                      |

*Exercise 3.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION, A-VERBS. ACTIVE VOICE.

*Perfect and Aorist Tense.*

N.B.—Amavi =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ have loved (Perfect).} \\ I \text{ loved, or did love (Aorist).} \end{array} \right.$

- |                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. We have praised.                   | 13. They do not praise.   |
| 2. They danced.                       | 14. Thou hast not called. |
| 3. He did not fight.                  | 15. We are dancing.       |
| 4. You ( <i>sing.</i> ) were calling. | 16. I was calling.        |
| 5. He sings.                          | 17. They are dancing.     |
| 6. He will dance.                     | 18. We will ask.          |
| 7. They have asked.                   | 19. He has praised.       |
| 8. We did not praise.                 | 20. You have asked.       |
| 9. You will ask.                      | 21. You will call.        |
| 10. They fought.                      | 22. We have fought.       |
| 11. They did not dance.               | 23. You are calling.      |
| 12. We were calling.                  | 24. I did not praise.     |

*Exercise 4.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION, A-VERBS. ACTIVE VOICE.

*Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.*

**Rule.**—The Subject of the Sentence (if expressed) is in the Nominative Case, and the Verb must agree with its Subject in Person.

*fly, volo; wound, vulnero; spear, hasta; girl, puella; queen, regina.*

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. They had called.                   | 11. They did not fight.               |
| 2. He will have asked.                | 12. You ( <i>sing.</i> ) had praised. |
| 3. We have fought.                    | 13. The queen will ask.               |
| 4. Ye were dancing.                   | 14. We shall have fought.             |
| 5. The girl will praise.              | 15. He had sung.                      |
| 6. We sang.                           | 16. The spear will wound.             |
| 7. They will have sung.               | 17. They do not fight.                |
| 8. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) did not praise. | 18. We were calling.                  |
| 9. The spear flies.                   | 19. The girl had danced.              |
| 10. We had wounded.                   | 20. Thou wilt have fought.            |

*Exercise 5.*

## FIRST DECLENSION, A-NOUNS.

**Rule.**—The Subject (if expressed) is in the Nominative Case, and the Verb must agree with its Subject in Number and Person.

*letter, epistol-a, -ae, f.; arrow, sagitt-a, -ae, f.*

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. The girls do not call.  | 11. The arrows were flying.   |
| 2. The queen will fight.   | 12. The queen had praised.    |
| 3. The spears wounded.     | 13. We shall have sung.       |
| 4. You did not dance.      | 14. Ye were asking.           |
| 5. I had not fought.       | 15. The queen does not dance. |
| 6. The queens praised.     | 16. They had fought.          |
| 7. The girls were dancing. | 17. We do not praise.         |
| 8. The spears will fly.    | 18. The girl has not sung.    |
| 9. We had sung.            | 19. They have asked.          |
| 10. Thou didst fight.      | 20. We are not praising.      |

*Exercise 6.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION, E-VERBS. ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT-STEM TENSES.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Simple.*

**Rule.**—The Object of a Transitive Verb is in Accusative.

| SUBJECT.             | TRANSITIVE VERB. | OBJECT.               |
|----------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>The queen</i>     | <i>loves</i>     | <i>the girl.</i>      |
| <i>Regina (Nom.)</i> | <i>amat</i>      | <i>puellam (Acc.)</i> |

*teach, doce-o; hold, tene-o; fear, time-o.*

- |                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. We fear the queen.     | 11. They were holding letters. |
| 2. Ye teach the girls.    | 12. You will fear the spear.   |
| 3. The girl will fear.    | 13. Thou didst not call.       |
| 4. They hold a spear.     | 14. Spears had wounded.        |
| 5. Ye were not teaching.  | 15. They will teach girls.     |
| 6. Thou dost fear.        | 16. The girls were fearing.    |
| 7. We had not danced.     | 17. You will not have fought.  |
| 8. He praised the letter. | 18. Thou teachest the queen.   |
| 9. I will teach the girl. | 19. They fear the spears.      |
| 10. He is not fighting.   | 20. He called the girl.        |

*Exercise 7.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION, E-VERBS. ACTIVE VOICE.

## PERFECT-STEM TENSES.

*Perfect and Aorist, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.**water, aqu-a, -ae, f.**anger, ir-a, -ae, f.*

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. We held spears.            | 11. The queen will have advised. |
| 2. You do not fear anger.     | 12. You are not praising.        |
| 3. The girl had not taught.   | 13. They fear the water.         |
| 4. Thou didst teach the girl. | 14. The girls had not fought.    |
| 5. We praised the letter.     | 15. I did not praise the girl.   |
| 6. I did not fear the arrow.  | 16. The queen has not feared.    |
| 7. We do not praise the girl. | 17. The arrow has wounded.       |
| 8. We shall not fight.        | 18. The spears did not wound.    |
| 9. He was teaching the girl.  | 19. Thou hadst taught the queen. |
| 10. They had held the arrows. | 20. Thou art holding a letter.   |

*Exercise 8.*

## SECOND DECLENSION (DOMINUS AND MAGISTER).

*slave, serv-us, -i, m.**friend, amic-us, -i, m.**master, magis-ter, -tri, m. book, li-ber, -bri, m.*

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. The slaves feared the queen. | 11. The spear wounded the girl.  |
| 2. The friend will hold spears. | 12. You were holding the book.   |
| 3. The girl fears the slaves.   | 13. The girls have not sung.     |
| 4. I did not praise the girl.   | 14. Thou hast called the slaves. |
| 5. The master had taught.       | 15. The queen loves the friends. |
| 6. We will praise the book.     | 16. We fear the master.          |
| 7. You (s.) do not fear water.  | 17. You had held the spear.      |
| 8. I had called a slave.        | 18. We did not call the girl.    |
| 9. The girls loved the queen.   | 19. We were teaching the slaves. |
| 10. They will not have fought.  | 20. They praised the letters.    |



*Exercise 9.*

## SECOND DECLENSION (PUER AND BELLUM).

*gift*, don-um, -i, n.      *dart*, tel-um, -i, n.  
*frighten*, terre-o (2nd Conj.)

- |                               |                                          |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. The boys loved books.      | 11. You ( <i>sing.</i> ) will have sung. |
| 2. We did not fear war.       | 12. The girl held letters.               |
| 3. The queen was calling.     | 13. Masters will teach boys.             |
| 4. Ye have taught boys.       | 14. Slaves fear darts.                   |
| 5. I will praise the gifts.   | 15. We had called the girl.              |
| 6. The slaves feared water.   | 16. They praised the gifts.              |
| 7. Boys will hold arrows.     | 17. The queen will not fight.            |
| 8. The darts wound the boys.  | 18. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) were not singing. |
| 9. The girls are not dancing. | 19. They frightened the girl.            |
| 10. We do not fear boys.      | 20. The slaves had fought.               |

*Exercise 10.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION, CONSONANT VERBS. ACTIVE.

## PRESENT-STEM TENSES.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Simple.*

*lead*, duc-o (3rd), perfect-stem dux-  
*send*, mitt-o (3rd)      „      mis-  
*write*, scrib-o (3rd)      „      scrips-

- |                                          |                                          |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. We will send a slave.                 | 11. The girls will dance.                |
| 2. The queen writes books.               | 12. The queen held a spear.              |
| 3. You ( <i>s.</i> ) were leading a boy. | 13. They will send letters.              |
| 4. Friends will send gifts.              | 14. We are leading boys.                 |
| 5. We write letters.                     | 15. We will write books.                 |
| 6. The boys were writing.                | 16. The master taught girls.             |
| 7. The girls loved books.                | 17. We will praise the queen.            |
| 8. We had taught boys.                   | 18. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) had held letters. |
| 9. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) send arrows.       | 19. The girl will send gifts.            |
| 10. They had called a slave.             | 20. Friends write letters.               |

*Exercise 11.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION, CONSONANT VERBS. ACTIVE.

## PERFECT-STEM TENSES.

*Perfect and Aorist, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.*

son, fili-us, -i, m.                      messenger, nunti-us, -i, m.  
*Julia*, Juli-a, ae, f.                      *and*, et.

**Rule.**—When the Subject consists of two or more Nouns joined by *and*, the Verb must be Plural.

1. The boys and the girls wrote letters.
2. We had sent a slave and a messenger.
3. The queen will have sent arrows and spears.
4. The slaves had led the boy and the girl.
5. We have written letters and books.
6. You will send slaves and messengers.
7. The girl and the boy were calling the queen.
8. The spears wounded the queen and the slave.
9. You had sent books and gifts.
10. Julia and the girls will have sung.

*Exercise 12.*

## ADJECTIVES IN -US, -A, -UM.

**Rule.**—An Adjective must be of the same Gender, Number and Case as the Noun which it qualifies.

*great*, magn-us, -a, -um ; *small*, parv-us, -a, -um ; *long*, long-us, -a, -um.  
*my*, mine, me-us, -a, -um ; *your*, thy, tu-us, -a, -um ; *many*, mult-us.

1. Your son has written a long letter.
2. My slaves had led the little girls.
3. We shall have sent great books.
4. You were holding arrows and long spears.
5. The queen praised my gifts and your letters.
6. The little girls do not fear the water.
7. We have sent many slaves and messengers.
8. The good queen will praise the little boys.
9. The long spear has not wounded my slave.
10. Your books will teach the boys and girls.

*Exercise 13.*

## ADJECTIVES IN -ER, -A, -UM (NIGER AND TENER).

*beautiful*, pul-cher, -chra, -chrum. *wretched*, mis-er, -era, -erum.  
*your*, vest-er, -tra, -trum (speaking to more than one).  
*our*, noster, -tra, -trum.

1. Our sons were calling your slaves.
2. The black slaves feared the long spears.
3. We praised the beautiful girl and the little boy.
4. You (*sing.*) will teach your son and our slaves.
5. The good queen had sent many messengers.
6. Our friends write many books and long letters.
7. We shall have called our slaves.
8. Our spears wounded the wretched queen.
9. You (*pl.*) will have praised our friends.
10. The little boys will praise the beautiful gifts.
11. You (*sing.*) had sent your son and my friend.
12. The tender boys and the slaves did not fight.

*Exercise 14.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, I-VERBS. ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT-STEM TENSES.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Simple.*

*instruct*, erudi-o (4); *punish*, puni-o (4); *hinder*, impedi-o (4);  
*wall*, mur-us, -i, m.

1. The long spears were hindering the little boys.
2. Good masters will instruct our sons.
3. The great queen does not punish the slaves.
4. You do not instruct the boys and girls.
5. The great wall hinders our messengers.
6. Many arrows had wounded the wretched queen.
7. Our friends will praise our letters.
8. The tender girls did not fear the darts.
9. Our letters will instruct the little girl.
10. We shall have sent books and many gifts.
11. The beautiful girls were holding the books.
12. I shall punish my son and your slaves.

*Exercise 15.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, I-VERBS. ACTIVE VOICE.

## PERFECT-STEM TENSES.

*Perfect and Aorist, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.**Use of the Genitive Case.*

|                                             |                                |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>shut</i> , claud-o (3), Perf.-St. claus- | <i>gate</i> , port-a, -ae, f.  |
| <i>break</i> , frang-o (3), „ freg-         | <i>town</i> , oppid-um, -i, n. |

1. We will shut the great gate of the town.
2. The sons of the queen had broken many arrows.
3. The wall of the town will have hindered our messenger.
4. You have praised the gifts of the girls.
5. Our friends were writing a great book.
6. The black slave was leading the little girl.
7. You have not shut the gate of the town.
8. The slaves held many arrows and spears.
9. We will instruct the little son of the slave.
10. The queen's friends had sent the messengers.
11. We do not fear the slaves' arrows.

*Exercise 16.*

## THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS.

|                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>judge</i> , judex, judic-is, m.   | <i>virgin</i> , virgo, virgin-is, f. |
| <i>soldier</i> , miles, milit-is, m. | <i>king</i> , rex, reg-is, m.        |
| <i>voice</i> , vox, voc-is, m.       | <i>lion</i> , leo, leon-is, m.       |

- |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. The soldiers will fight. | 6. The judges punish.        |
| 2. The kings had praised.   | 7. I praised the virgin.     |
| 3. We heard a voice.        | 8. I call the king's slaves. |
| 4. You feared the lions.    | 9. The judge's son sings.    |
| 5. Thou lovest the king.    | 10. You taught kings.        |
11. The sons of the king had written many letters.
  12. The judges punished the slaves and the soldiers.
  13. The boys' spears had wounded the lion.
  14. Your voice will frighten the little girls.
  15. The soldiers did not fear the spears of the slaves.
  16. We do not hear the voices of the virgins.

*Exercise 17.*

## THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT NOUNS. NEUTER.

|                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>name</i> , nomen, nomin-is, n.    | <i>work</i> , opus, oper-is, n.   |
| <i>song</i> , carmen, carmin-is, n.  | <i>burden</i> , onus, oner-is, n. |
| <i>river</i> , flumen, flumin-is, n. |                                   |

1. The great kings punished the wretched slaves.
2. We heard the voices of many soldiers.
3. Your voice will frighten the son of the queen.
4. The king and the queen praised the good judge.
5. You heard the songs of the beautiful girls.
6. Many soldiers were holding arrows and spears.
7. The great river will hinder our slaves.
8. We had led the little son of the great king.
9. The son of the good judge writes many books.
10. The slaves had shut the great gates of our town.
11. The good king praised the song of the girls.
12. The little boys feared the voice of the great lion.

*Exercise 18.*

## THIRD DECLENSION, I-NOUNS.

|                               |                                               |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>sheep</i> , ov-is, -is, f. | <i>enemy</i> , host-is, -is, m.               |
| <i>bird</i> , av-is, -is, f.  | <i>sea</i> , mar-e, -is, n.                   |
| <i>ship</i> , nav-is, -is, f. | <i>conquer</i> , vine-o, 3, Perf.-Stem, vic-. |

1. The queen's ships will frighten our enemies.
2. The girls heard the voice of the little birds.
3. We do not fear the great ship of our enemies.
4. The darts of the soldiers wounded many slaves.
5. Our enemies will not conquer the king's soldiers.
6. The little boy was holding a beautiful bird.
7. Your arrows have wounded the tender sheep.
8. We praise the voices of the beautiful virgins.
9. You had broken the spears of many soldiers.
10. The ships of the enemy frightened our slaves.
11. You have not shut the great gates of your town.
12. The sons of the judges do not fear the great sea.

## Exercise 19.

## THE VERB 'SUM.'

The Complement of a Copulative Verb agrees with the Subject.

s. v.c. c.                      s. v.c. c.  
*The queen is good, Regina est bona.*

*hard, dur-us, -a, -um.*

*timid, timid-us, -a, -um.*

*high, deep, alt-us, -a, um.*

*sick, ill, aeg-er, -ra, -rum.*

- |                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. The king was sick.      | 7. You will have been sick.  |
| 2. The boys were small.    | 8. We are not soldiers.      |
| 3. The ships are great.    | 9. The ships were black.     |
| 4. The gifts will be many. | 10. You have been a king.    |
| 5. Your son is a slave.    | 11. The letter will be long. |
| 6. We had been friends.    | 12. We are the king's sons.  |
13. The friends of the queen are the enemies of the king.  
14. The gates of the great town will be high.  
15. The spears of our soldiers were hard.  
16. The sons of the good judges have been soldiers.

## Exercise 20.

## FIRST CONJUGATION, A-VERBS. PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT-STEM TENSES.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Simple.*

*carry, porto (1).*

*blame, culpo (1).*

*show, point out, monstro (1).*

*tower, turr-is, -is, f.*

The Passive Voice is used when that which is denoted by the Subject *has something done to it*.

Thus, *The boy calls (Active); the boy is called (Passive).*

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. We are blamed.          | 7. The voice is praised.  |
| 2. You were being praised. | 8. The boy is calling.    |
| 3. They will be carried.   | 9. The girls are called.  |
| 4. Thou art not fearing.   | 10. You will be blamed.   |
| 5. We were singing.        | 11. Thou art singing.     |
| 6. He was being blamed.    | 12. We were being called. |
13. The great burdens of our slaves were being carried.  
14. The voice of the beautiful virgin will be praised.  
15. The timid soldiers of the king are not praised.  
16. The gates and the towers of the town will be shown.

## Exercise 21.

## FIRST CONJUGATION, A-VERBS. PASSIVE VOICE.

*Perfect and Aorist Tense.*

(A) The Participle (*amatus*) used in forming this Tense has three terminations, like an Adjective in -us, -a, -um, and agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: thus:

*The boy was loved* = puer amatus est.

*The girl was loved* = puella amata est.

*The girls were loved* = puellae amatae sunt.

- |                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. We were wounded.      | 4. They have been called.  |
| 2. The queen was blamed. | 5. The girls were praised. |
| 3. The town was shown.   | 6. Burdens were carried.   |

(B) Distinguish the uses of 'was' and 'were'

(i) as Auxiliary; (ii) as Copulative Verbs.

(i) *The boy was blamed* = Puer culpatus est.

(ii) *The boy was brave* = Puer fortis erat.

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The river was deep.   | 4. The song was praised. |
| 2. The works were shown. | 5. The ships were black. |
| 3. Friends were called.  | 6. The town was great.   |

(C) 'I was loved' is the Aorist Passive.

'I was being loved' is the Imperfect Passive.

'I was loving' is the Imperfect Active.

- |                                                         |                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. You were called.                                     | 6. We were being called.  |
| 2. We were blamed.                                      | 7. Boys were fighting.    |
| 3. The work was praised.                                | 8. Kings were wounded.    |
| 4. The girl has been called.                            | 9. The voice was praised. |
| 5. The girls were beautiful.                            | 10. Spears were carried.  |
| 11. The song of the beautiful virgins was praised.      |                           |
| 12. The great ships of our kings were shown.            |                           |
| 13. The soldiers of the good queen have been wounded.   |                           |
| 14. The messengers of the judges will be blamed.        |                           |
| 15. The great stones of the walls were being shown.     |                           |
| 16. We do not fear the ships and soldiers of the enemy. |                           |
| 17. You have written many letters and many books.       |                           |
| 18. The gifts of the little boys were praised.          |                           |

*Exercise 22.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION, A-VERBS. PASSIVE VOICE.

*Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.***Rule.**

'By' (or 'with') a *thing*, Ablative only (Instrument).

'By' a *person*, Ablat. with 'a' or 'ab' (Agent).

Ex.—*He was wounded by arrows* = vulneratus est sagittis (Inst.).

*He was wounded by a soldier* = vulneratus est a milite (Agent).

N.B.—*a* and *ab* both mean 'by,' but *a* is used before consonants and *ab* before vowels.

- (A) 1. The good boys will be praised by the masters.  
 2. The king has been wounded by the arrows of the slaves.  
 3. Your books had been praised by the friends of the judges.  
 4. The tender girl had been wounded by a great stone.  
 5. Many rivers will have been pointed out by the boys.  
 6. We have been blamed by the king and by the queen.  
 7. You will have been called by our friends.  
 8. We will break the gates of the town with our spears.  
 9. You have frightened the timid girls with your voice.  
 10. Many towns were attacked by the soldiers.  
 11. We were building a high wall with great stones.  
 12. The judges have written great books and many letters.
- (B) 1. The songs of the beautiful virgin were praised.  
 2. Many soldiers were wounded by your arrows.  
 3. The tender birds had been wounded by the stones.  
 4. The deep river was pointed out by the slaves.  
 5. The spears and arrows of the enemy were long.  
 6. Great burdens were being carried by our slaves.  
 7. The soldiers had broken the gates with a stone.  
 8. The good laws of our kings have been praised.  
 9. The enemies were many : our soldiers were few.  
 10. You will be blamed by your friends and by your enemies.  
 11. The timid girls were fearing the great lion.  
 12. The son of the king was blamed by the judge.



*Exercise 23.*

## ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

## TRISTIS AND TRISTIOR.

- |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. The song was short.   | 6. By brave boys.     |
| 2. The girls are brave.  | 7. Of a sweet song.   |
| 3. The books were heavy. | 8. Short letters.     |
| 4. Of brave soldiers.    | 9. A better gift.     |
| 5. By a short spear.     | 10. Of better spears. |
11. The sweet voices of the girls will lead our friends.
  12. We were wounded by the heavy spears of the soldiers.
  13. The heavy books were carried by the little boys.
  14. The short song had been praised by the king.
  15. The arrows of the brave soldiers are short.
  16. The heavy stones will hinder the king's messengers.
  17. Better ships will be built by the brave queen.

*Exercise 24.*

## ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

## FELIX AND INGENS.

**Apposition.**—The Person or Thing indicated by a Noun is sometimes further described by another Noun which agrees with the first in Case and is said to be in Apposition.

*Romulus the king has fought.*

Romulus rex pugnavit.

*We fear Romulus the king.*

Romulum regem timemus.

*The son of Romulus the king.*

Filius Romuli regis.

1. The bold slaves broke the heavy gates of the town.
2. Caius, your friend, has been praised by the judge.
3. The vast walls were being built by the slaves of the queen.
4. The books of Caius, the judge, were praised by the king.
5. We feared the swift arrows and the heavy spears.
6. The voices of the wise judges were being heard.
7. Lentulus and Caesar, our friends, had been called.
8. The towns had been attacked by the bold slaves.
9. Caius, our slave, has been wounded by a heavy stone.
10. A sweet song was sung by Julia, a happy girl.
11. The bold lion had terrified the tender sheep.

*Exercise 25.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION, E-VERBS. PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT-STEM TENSES.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Simple.*

1. Caius, the son of our friend, will lead the soldiers.
2. The boys were being taught by Lentulus, a wise master.
3. We do not fear Caius, the son of a wise king.
4. Ye were wounded by the heavy spears of the soldiers.
5. Julia, the sister of Caius, your friend, is beautiful.
6. The little birds are frightened by our voices.
7. The bold enemy (*pl.*) will not attack the great city.
8. Your letters will have been praised by the wise queen.
9. You were being taught by Caius, the son of our friend.
10. The anger of the judges will be feared by your slaves.

*Exercise 26.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION, E-VERBS. PASSIVE VOICE.

## SUPINE-STEM TENSES.

*Perfect and Aorist, Pluperfect, and Future Simple.*

**Rule.**—When an Adjective qualifies two or more Nouns of different Genders, the Adjective agrees in Gender with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine.

*The boy and the girl are beautiful* = puer et puella sunt pulchri.

So with the Participle used in the Perfect-Stem Tenses of the Passive :

*The boy and the girl were loved* = puer et puella amati sunt.

1. The wall and the gate were built by Caius, your friend.
2. The boy and the girl had been taught by the son of the judge.
3. We have seen Julia, your sister, and Lentulus, our friend.
4. The books and the letters were praised by the wise king.
5. Heavy stones had been moved by the great river.
6. We shall have been seen by the Gauls, our enemies.
7. You were frightened by the voices of the messengers.
8. The bold slaves had broken the gates of the city.
9. Rome, our city, will be attacked by all the soldiers.
10. The sweet song of the girls will be praised by the queen.

*Exercise 27.*

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

**Rule.**—When an Adjective qualifies the words ‘man’ (‘woman’) or ‘thing’ the Noun is often omitted in Latin, and the Adjective shows by its Gender whether ‘man’ (‘woman’) or ‘thing’ is meant.

SING. Masc. *a good man* = bonus      PLURAL. *good men* = boni  
 Neut. *a good thing* = bonum      *good things* = bona.

1. The vast armies of the Gauls were seen by our (men).
2. All your works have been praised by the wise (men).
3. The friends of Caius the wise judge wrote many things.
4. We will shut the gates of the city with our (own) hands.
5. You did not see the bows and the arrows of the enemy (*pl.*).
6. Many will blame Caesar, the general of your army.
7. The brave fear not the armies and the chariots of kings.
8. Rome, the city of brave men, will be attacked by the Gauls.
9. The heavy burden was moved by the hand of a girl.
10. The king and the queen were loved by all good men.

*Exercise 28.*THIRD CONJUGATION, CONSONANT VERBS. PASSIVE.  
PRESENT-STEM TENSES.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Simple.*

**Rule.**—‘With’ when it means ‘together with’ or ‘in company with’ is translated by the Preposition ‘cum’ followed by the Ablative.

*I send a slave with the boy* = mitto servum cum puero.

Distinguish this from the Ablative of Instrument (see Exercise 22).

*He was slain with a spear* = hasta occisus est.

1. Vast armies were being led by the brave general.
2. You will be slain by the heavy spear of the Gaul.
3. Many gifts will be sent by Julia your sister.
4. We will send a swift messenger with your slave.
5. Our king with (his) son will be slain by the enemy.
6. The gate of the city is being broken with a vast stone.
7. The Gauls with a vast army will attack our city.
8. Brave (men) are not frightened by waves and wind.
9. The wheels of our chariots will be broken by the stones.
10. We shall be led by Caesar, a brave general.

*Exercise 29.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION, CONSONANT VERBS. PASSIVE.

## SUPINE-STEM TENSES.

*Perfect and Aorist, Pluperf. and Fut. Perf.***Rule.**—‘To’ without motion towards: Dative only.

‘To’ with motion towards: ‘in’ or ‘ad’ with Accusative.

*Useful to the soldiers* = *utilis militibus.**He was sent to the city* = *ad urbem missus est.*

1. The name of our general is dear to all the soldiers.
2. All the slaves have been sent to the great city.
3. The wall of the temple was broken by the waves.
4. Our armies had been conquered by the Gauls, our enemies.
5. The words of the judges will be declared to the king.
6. The messengers had been sent to the city of the queen.
7. We were marching with a great army to the river.
8. Many brave men were slain by the darts of the enemy.
9. The ships of the enemy were useful to our queen.
10. The wheels of the chariot had been broken by the stones

*Exercise 30.*

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

The Latin Preposition ‘in’ is used with Accus. and with Abl.

in + Acc. = ‘into’ or ‘to,’ motion towards a place.

in + Abl. = ‘in’ or ‘on,’ position in a place.

*into the city* = *in urbem*; *in the city* = *in urbe.*

1. We have not seen Lentulus, the friend of your son.
2. We will march with Caesar, our general, into Italy.
3. All things will be declared to the judge by the slaves.
4. Many were slain in the town by the arrows of the Gauls.
5. Julia, your sister, is dear to all (her) friends.
6. The slaves were carrying a heavy burden into the town.
7. The armies of our enemies will march into Italy.
8. We were showing our books to Lentulus, your son.
9. Caesar, our general, has carried on many great wars.
10. The queen will sit with the king in a beautiful chariot.

*Exercise 31.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, I-VERBS. PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT-STEM TENSES.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Simple.*

**Rule.**—Time ‘when’ is expressed by the Ablative.

Time ‘how long’ is expressed by the Accusative.

*He was killed in the first year* = primo anno occisus est.

*He will remain many years* = multos annos manebit.

1. We were being instructed by Lentulus, a wise master.
2. You will be hindered by the river and by the walls.
3. The city is being fortified by Caesar, the general.
4. The next day the slaves were sent out of the town.
5. Many captives were being led into Italy by our (men).
6. The son of the general was wounded with a short spear.
7. We have been sent with the swift messenger to the king.
8. The words of the wise are praised by all good (men).
9. We do not fear the armies of the Gauls, our enemies.
10. The voice of the general will be heard by all the soldiers.
11. The gate of the city will be guarded by a brave man.

*Exercise 32.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, I-VERBS. PASSIVE VOICE.

## SUPINE-STEM TENSES.

*Perfect and Aorist, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.*

1. On the next day a voice was heard in the temples.
2. For many days the captives remained in the city.
3. All the cities of Italy had been fortified by our men.
4. The messenger was sent out of the city at the first hour.
5. The next year many brave (men) were slain by the enemies.
6. The great rivers will hinder the armies of the Gauls.
7. On the second day the town will be attacked by the king.
8. The messengers had declared your words to the judge.
9. You were seen by Caius our slave and by many citizens.
10. We feared the darts of the enemy and the waves of the sea.
11. For many hours we sat with the captives in the temple.

*Exercise 33.*

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (REGULAR).

**Rule.**—‘*Quam*’ = *than* : the Noun after ‘*quam*’ is in the same Case as the Noun before it.

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A sweeter song.       | 7. By a very bold man.   |
| 2. The heaviest burden.  | 8. By a heavier stone.   |
| 3. Very brave (men).     | 9. With dearest friends. |
| 4. More beautiful girls. | 10. Sweeter songs.       |
| 5. Of a shorter letter.  | 11. A wiser word.        |
| 6. Of longer spears.     | 12. Of heavier darts     |
13. The spears of the Gauls are longer than ours (*i.e.* our spears).  
 14. We will send Caius, the boldest of all the citizens.  
 15. The songs of little birds are sweeter than your voice.  
 16. I hear the voice of Lentulus, a very brave soldier.  
 17. To a wise man books are more useful than spears.  
 18. We have not seen a more beautiful land than Italy.

*Exercise 34.*COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*).

Adjectives in -er ; *facilis*, &c. ; Irregular Comparison.

1. We have seen Rome, the largest city of Italy.
2. Very many brave (men) were slain by the Gauls.
3. We will show the best books to Julia, your sister.
4. Caesar, with a very large army, is marching into Italy.
5. The boldest soldiers feared the chariots of the enemy.
6. You have never seen a larger river than the Rhine.
7. The books were written by Caius, a very bad judge.
8. A very great forest will hinder Caesar's army.
9. The best citizens are praised by Romulus, the king.
10. The deeds of many (men) are better than (their) words.
11. We will remain many days in a very beautiful city.
12. The worst citizens will be punished by the judges.

## VOCABULARY TO PART I.

*all*, omn-is (*like* tristis).

*and*, et.

*anger*, ir-a, -ae, f.

*announce (to)*, nunti-o (nuntia-), (1).

*army*, exercit-us, -ūs, m.

*arrow*, sāgitt-a, -ae, f.

*ask (to)*, rōg-o (roga-), (1).

*attack (to)*, oppugn-o, (oppugna-), (1).

*beautiful*, pul-cher, -chra, -chrum.

*better*, mēlior, meliōr-is.

*bird*, āv-is, is, f.

*blame (to)*, culp-o (culpa-), (1).

*bold*, audax, audāc-is (*like* felix).

*book*, liber, libr-i.

*bow*, arc-us, -ūs.

*brave*, fort-is (*like* tristis).

*break (to)*, frang-o, frēg-i, fract-um, (3).

*build (to)*, aedific-o (aedifica-), (1).

*burden*, ōnus, onēr-is, n.

*Caesar*, Caesar-is, m.

*Caius*, Cai-us, -i, m.

*call (to)*, vōc-o (voca-), (1).

*captive*, captiv-us, -i, m.

*carry (to)*, port-o (porta-), (1).

*carry on (to)*, gēr-o, gess-i, gest-um, (3).

*chariot*, curr-us, -ūs, m.

*citizen*, civ-is, -is, m.

*city*, urbs, urb-is, f.

*conquer (to)*, vinc-o, vīc-i, vict-um.

*country*, patri-a, -ae, f.

*dance (to)*, salt-o (salta-), (1).

*dart*, tēlum, -i, n.

*dear*, cār-us, -a, -um.

*declare (to)*, nunti-o (nuntia-) (1).

*deed*, fact-um, -i, n.

*deep*, alt-us, -a, -um.

*Diana*, Diān-a, -ae, f.

*enemy*, host-is, -is, m.

*father*, pāter, patr-is, m.

*fear (to)*, tīme-o, (2).

*fight (to)*, pugn-o (pugna-), (1).

*first*, prim-us, -a, -um.

*fly (to)*, vōl-o (vola-), (1).

*forest*, silv-a, ae, f.

*fortify (to)*, mūni-o, (4).

*friend*, āmic-us, -i, m.

*frighten (to)*, terre-o, (2).

*gate*, port-a, -ae, f.

*Gaul (a)*, Gall-us, -i, m.

*general*, imperator, imperator-is, m.

*gift*, dōn-um, -i, n.

*girl*, puell-a, -ae, f.

*great*, magn-us, -a, -um,

*guard*, custōdi-o, (4).

*hand*, mǎn-us, -ūs, f.

*hard*, dūr-us, -a, -um.

*heavy*, grāv-is (*like* tristis).

*high*, alt-us, -a, -um.

*hinder (to)*, impēdi-o, (4).

*hold (to)*, tēne-o, (2).

*hour*, hōr-a, -ae, f.

*idle*, ignav-us, -a, -um.

*instruct (to)*, ērūdi-o, (4).

*Italy*, Itālī-a, -ae, f.

*Julia*, Juli-a, -ae.

*kill (to)*, occīd-o, occīd-i, occis-um,

(3).

*king*, rex, rēg-is, m.

*law*, lex, lēg-is, f.  
*lead (to)*, dūc-o, dux-i, duct-um, (3).  
*Lentulus*, Lentūl-us, -i, m.  
*letter*, ēpistōl-a, -ae, f.  
*lion*, leo, leōn-is, m.  
*little*, parv-us, -a, -um.  
*long*, long-us, -a, -um.  
  
*many*, mult-us, -a, -um.  
*march (to)*, contend-o, contend-i, (3).  
*messenger*, nunti-us, -i, m.  
*move (to)*, mōve-o, mōv-i, mot-um, (2).  
*my, mine*, me-us, -a, -um.  
  
*never*, nunquam.  
*next*, proxim-us, -a, -um.  
  
*our*, noster, nostra, nostrum.  
  
*pleasant*, jūcund-us, -a, -um.  
*praise (to)*, laud-o (lauda-), (1).  
*punish (to)*, pūni-o, (4).  
  
*queen*, rēgīn-a, -ae, f.  
  
*remain (to)*, māne-o, mans-i, (2).  
*Rhine*, Rhenus, -i.  
*river*, flumen, flumin-is, n.  
*Rome*, Rom-a, -ae, f.  
  
*sad*, tristis.  
*sea*, mar-e, -is, n.  
*second*, sēcund-us, -a, -um.  
*see (to)*, vīde-o, vīd-i, vis-um, (2).  
*send (to)*, mitt-o, mīs-i, miss-um, (3).  
*ship*, nāv-is, -is, f.  
*short*, brēvis (like tristis).  
*show (to)*, monstr-o (monstra-), (1).  
*shut (to)*, claud-o, claus-i, claus-um, (3).  
*sick*, aeger, aegra, aegrum.  
*sing (to)*, cant-o (canta-), (1).  
*sister*, sōror, sorōr-is, f.  
*sit (to)*, sēde-o, sēd-i, sess-um (2).  
*slave*, serv-us, -i, m.

*slay (to)*, occīd-o, occīd-i, occis-um, (3).  
*small*, parv-us, -a, -um.  
*soldier*, miles, milit-is, m.  
*son*, fili-us, -i, m.  
*song*, carmen, carmīn-is, n.  
*sorrowful*, tristis.  
*spear*, hast-a, -ae, f.  
*stone*, lāpis, lapīd-is, m.  
*sweet*, dulc-is (like tristis).  
*swift*, vēlox, velōc-is (like felix).  
  
*table*, mens-a, -ae, f.  
*teach (to)*, dōce-o, docu-i, doct-um, (2).  
*temple*, templ-um, -i, n.  
*tender*, tener, -a, -um.  
*thy, thine*, tu-us, -a, -um.  
*timid*, tīmīd-us, -a, -um.  
*tower*, turr-is, -is, f.  
*town*, oppīd-um, -i, n.  
  
*useful*, ūtīl-is (like tristis).  
  
*voice*, vox, vōc-is, f.  
  
*wall*, mūr-us, -i, m.  
*water*, āqu-a, -ae, f.  
*wave*, fluct-us, -ūs, m.  
*wheel*, rōt-a, -ae, f.  
*wind*, vent-us, -i, m.  
*wise*, sāpiens, sapient-is (like ingens).  
*wood (a)*, silv-a, -ae, f.  
*word*, verb-um, -i, n.  
*work*, ōpus, opēr-is, n.  
*wound (to)*, vulnēr-o (vulnera-), (1).  
*wretched*, mīser, misera, miserum.  
*write (to)*, scrib-o, scrips-i, script-um, (3).  
  
*year*, ann-us, -i, m.  
*your*, tu-us, -a, -um (speaking to one person); vester, vestra, vestrum (speaking to more than one).



## PART II.

# THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

N.B.—In these Exercises it is assumed that the pupil has a practical acquaintance with

- (a) The Indicative Mood of Regular Verbs ;
- (b) The Declensions of Nouns and Adjectives ;
- (c) The Concords of
  - i. Verb with Subject,
  - ii. Adjective with Noun ;
- (d) The simplest uses of the Cases.

*N.B.—Two English words connected by hyphens to be translated by one Latin word.*

*English words in brackets not to be translated.*

*Exercise 35.***Subject + Transitive Verb + Object (Accus.).**

Ex. *The king took the city* = Rex urbem cepit.

**into** or **upon** (motion towards) = Latin 'in' + **Acc.**

**in** or **upon** (no „ „ ) = „ 'in' + **Abl.**

is, ea, id = *that*, pl. *those*. L. P. § 63.

N.B.—*wise men*, or *the wise* = *sapientes*; *our men* = *nostri*; *many things* = *multa*.

- A.
1. That legion bravely sustained the charge of the enemy.
  2. The barbarians will send round messengers into all parts.
  3. Our general had drawn-up his line in that place.
  4. The father of that man formerly occupied the throne.
  5. We were enrolling new legions in those districts.
  6. He immediately pitches the camp in that valley.
  7. We will send a great part of the cavalry across that river.
  8. Our (men) therefore place all hope of safety in courage.
  9. The Helvetii quickly made a journey into that district.
  10. Meanwhile our horsemen were laying-waste those fields.
- B.
1. They have thrown all our ambassadors into chains.
  2. Meanwhile he was awaiting the arrival of that legion.
  3. Our general is carrying-on war in that district.
  4. The enemy will send ambassadors into our camp.
  5. You have spent a great part of the day in those matters.
  6. The barbarians immediately made a charge upon our (men).
  7. Your brother easily accomplished that difficult matter.
  8. We were building a great number of ships in that river.
  9. They threw all the blame of that matter on the multitude.
  10. After a short time he gave the signal and joined battle.

*Exercise 36.*

Subject + { Intransitive Verb or  
Passive of Transitive Vb.

Ex. *years flee* = *anni fugiunt*; *books are read* = *libri leguntur*.

by a person (Agent) = Lat. prep. **a** or **ab** + Abl.

by a thing (Instrument) = **Ablative** without Preposition.

**hic, haec, hoc** = *this*, pl. *these*. L. P. § 63.

N.B.—*the boy's* = *of the boy* (Gen. Sing.);

*the boys'* = *of the boys* (Gen. Pl.).

- A. 1. Our (men) were terrified by the shouts of the barbarians.  
 2. All these towns had been burnt by the inhabitants.  
 3. The old men and women were standing on the walls of the town.  
 4. These ships were being detained by a great storm.  
 5. Meanwhile he hastens into that district by great marches.  
 6. The general's son has been wounded by this arrow.  
 7. This valley is bounded on-all-sides by high mountains.  
 8. The barbarians' cavalry will be repulsed by our (men).  
 9. After a short time they came into sight of our camp.  
 10. The standard-bearer of this legion leapt into the sea.
- B. 1. We shall remain for-a-long-while in this city.  
 2. Suddenly they flew-out from all parts of the wood.  
 3. Meanwhile this war had been undertaken by Labienus.  
 4. The barbarians are attracted by the hope of booty.  
 5. This state has been saved by our leader's courage.  
 6. A great part of this district is inhabited by Gauls.  
 7. This place had been fortified by nature and by work.  
 8. The king's children were slain in the father's sight.  
 9. The inhabitants were coming-together into this place.  
 10. Many of these men were slain by the horsemen.

*Exercise 37.***Subj. + Factitive Vb. + Object + Objective Complement.**

Ex. <sup>S.</sup> *They* <sup>V.F.</sup> *declared* <sup>O.</sup> *Cicero* <sup>O.C.</sup> *consul.*  
 Ciceronem consulem declaraverunt.

**with** = *together with* = Lat. prep. *cum* + Abl.

**with** = *by means of* = **Ablative only.**

*ille, illa, illud* = *that, yonder* (opposed to *hic*). L. P. § 63.

- A. 1. He has appointed yonder man master of the horsemen.  
 2. We will call these men the friends of the Roman people.  
 3. The standard-bearer said these things with a loud voice.  
 4. He is hastening into that district with all his forces.  
 5. These men are blamed by many: those are praised  
 by all.  
 6. After these things the citizens made Numa king.  
 7. They had left that part of the city entirely empty.  
 8. You have proclaimed Antonius an enemy of the state.  
 9. Already they were ascending our walls with ladders.  
 10. The inhabitants of that town had fled with the children.  
 11. You once called Cicero the father of (his) country.
- B. 1. Caesar had appointed this man king in that state.  
 2. The Roman people will declare yonder (man) consul.  
 3. You have rendered this city safe by your courage.  
 4. They are waging war with the neighbouring nations.  
 5. Those men have laid-waste our territories with fire.  
 6. The camp had been fortified with a rampart and ditch.  
 7. These men remained in the city: those fled to the woods.  
 8. The heads of the victims were adorned with flowers.  
 9. You once called that (man) the friend of the senate.  
 10. He immediately made a charge upon our cavalry.  
 11. The soldiers will choose Labienus (as) their leader.

*Exercise 38.*

Subj. + { Copulative Verb or } + Subjective Complement.  
 Passive of Fact. Vb. }

Ex. <sup>s. v.c. s.c.</sup> *Life is short* = <sup>s. v.c. s.c.</sup> *Vita est brevis* (Nom.).

*Cicero was declared consul* = C. consul declaratus est.

To with motion towards = Lat. prep. **in** or **ad** + **Accus.**

To without motion towards = **Dative.**

N.B.—*I gave the boy money* = *I gave money to the boy* (Dative).

*Idem, eadem, idem* = *same*, L. P. § 64. Comparison of *Ædj.*, L. P. § 48.

- A. 1. The name of liberty was always very-dear to the Romans.  
 2. Antonius has been declared an enemy by the senate.  
 3. The attack of Saguntum was the cause of this great war.  
 4. This man's father was called the friend of the senate.  
 5. The same men will be sent (as) ambassadors to Caesar.  
 6. That legion is considered very-faithful to our general.  
 7. You have been made consul by the consent of all.  
 8. With very-great speed they were running-down to the river.  
 9. They are more friendly to the Gauls than to our men.  
 10. The ships had arrived unhurt at the same harbour.
- B. 1. The Roman people will be a witness of that matter.  
 2. This speech was most-pleasing to all the citizens.  
 3. The Belgae are, without doubt, the bravest of these (men).  
 4. The same men were chosen consuls for-the-second-time.  
 5. They are sending-round ambassadors to those nations.  
 6. A great part of the wall was remaining untouched.  
 7. He gave (his) daughter to that man into marriage.  
 8. Our province has been rendered safe by your prudence.  
 9. Without delay he leads the forces to the same place.  
 10. The towns had been left empty by the inhabitants.

## Exercise 39.

Distinguish the uses of 'is,' 'are,' 'was,' 'were':

## AUXILIARY.

|                             |                    |                         |               |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| <i>The city is-standing</i> | = urbs stat        | — <i>was-standing</i>   | = stabat.     |
| <i>The ship is-sent</i>     | } = navis mittitur | — <i>was-being-sent</i> | = mittebatur. |
| <i>is-being-sent</i>        |                    | — <i>was-sent</i>       | = missa est.  |

## COPULATIVE.

*The ship is large* = navis magna est — *was large* = magna erat.

## ORDINARY INTRANSITIVE.

*There is a ship in the harbour* = navis est in portu.

N.B.—i. 'There' is not translated in such sentences as the last.

ii. Adverbs often separate Auxiliary and Participle: *the city was once standing*.

- A. 1. On-account-of the cold the corn (*pl.*) was not-yet ripe.  
 2. The mountains were being held by a great multitude.  
 3. In these places there was a great scarcity of corn.  
 4. Very-many ships were then being built in that river.  
 5. We were meanwhile awaiting the arrival of the legions.  
 6. The camp had already been fortified with a rampart.  
 7. All these towns were in the power of the same (man).  
 8. After a short time the signal was given with the trumpet  
 9. From that harbour the passage to Britain was shortest.  
 10. There were, however, in that legion very-brave soldiers.
- B. 1. Of all these nations the Belgae are nearest to the Germans.  
 2. On-account-of these causes there was very-great difficulty.  
 3. Few wounds were received by our men in that battle.  
 4. The towns were meanwhile being burnt by the Gauls.  
 5. This district is always considered the most fertile.  
 6. Our men were bravely sustaining the enemy's charge.  
 7. Messengers were immediately sent-round into all parts.  
 8. Cicero was formerly called the father of (his) country.  
 9. There was a marsh between the enemies' army and ours.  
 10. The town was-distant not far from that place.

*Exercise 40.*

RECAPITULATORY.—The four forms of the Simple Sentence.

1. **Subj. + Transitive Verb. + Object.**
2. **Subj. + Intrans. Vb. or Passive of Trans. Vb.**
3. **Subj. + Factitive Vb. + Obj. + Obj. Complement.**
4. **Subj. + Copul. Vb. or Pass. of Fact. Vb. + Subj. Compl.**

- A. 1. Our ambassadors had been thrown into chains by the Gauls.
2. The general has pitched his camp in a suitable place.
  3. The soldiers are fortifying that place with a deep ditch.
  4. All good citizens will declare Antonius an enemy.
  5. The consuls will always defend the liberty of the Roman people.
  6. That man is considered the wisest of all the citizens.
  7. Nobody was ever more friendly to the republic.
  8. There were, however, very-many cities in that district.
  9. Caesar had joined battle with the enemies' cavalry.
  10. I have recently explained the cause of my return.
  11. Hannibal was waging war against our ancestors.
  12. We do not reckon yonder man a Roman citizen.
- B. 1. This nation was reduced into slavery by Caesar.
2. The Gauls had slain a great number of our citizens.
  3. These things are announced to the enemy by deserters.
  4. Our men were sending darts from the higher ground.
  5. The camp had been left entirely empty by the Gauls.
  6. New legions are being enrolled in Italy by the consul.
  7. Many of our men had been wounded by the darts.
  8. We have received this custom from our ancestors.
  9. There was then a great multitude in the town.
  10. This district is considered the most fertile of Gaul.
  11. The recollection of war makes peace more pleasant.
  12. They send the noblest (men) of the state (as) ambassadors.



*Exercise 41.*

Distinguish the uses of **do** and **have** as

(1) AUXILIARY.<sup>1</sup>

(2) TRANSITIVE.

*I do not see* = non video.

*I do many things* = multa facio.

*We have seen* = vidimus.

*We have a fleet* = classem habemus.

**For** = *on account of, because of* = **ob** or **propter** + **Acc.**

**For** = *instead of, in defence of* = **pro** + **Abl.**

**For**: after '*fit*,' '*useful*,' etc. = **Dative.**

Verbs in **io**, as **capio**. L.P. § 98.

- A. 1. The soldiers hastily seize (their) arms and make a charge.  
 2. For this cause the consul will undertake that war.  
 3. Without doubt we do not all desire the same things.  
 4. Meanwhile he had chosen a suitable place for the camp.  
 5. We are taking (up) arms for the liberty of the state.  
 6. This man has very-great experience in military affairs.  
 7. You will not do these things without great difficulty.  
 8. All these nations have the same laws and the same magistrates.  
 9. Meanwhile fires are beheld in every direction.  
 10. Darts were being thrown upon our men from-all-sides.
- B. 1. The Helvetii were marching through our province.  
 2. This man's father had great influence in those districts.  
 3. They throw away their shields : our men do the same.  
 4. For these causes we do not undertake this matter.  
 5. That city will easily be taken by our general.  
 6. You are waging war for the liberty of the Roman people.  
 7. A suitable place is therefore taken for the camp.  
 8. We had a great number of captives in the city.  
 9. You will never receive the fruit of your labours.  
 10. Caesar did all these things with incredible speed.

<sup>1</sup> The more correct correlative to Auxiliary, viz. 'Substantive,' is avoided here, as being liable to cause confusion.

*Exercise 42.***Time**

'*how long*'      **Accus.** *for many hours* = multas horas.

'*when*'          **Ablat.** *at the third hour* = tertiā horā.

'*within which*' **Ablat.** *in three hours* = tribus horis.

|               |                           |                                                     |
|---------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 1000 men      | = mille homines           | } mille ( <i>sing.</i> ) is an<br>Indeclinable Adj. |
| with 1000 men | = cum mille hominibus     |                                                     |
| 6000 men      | = sex milia hominum       | } milia ( <i>pl.</i> ) is<br>a Neut. Noun.          |
| with 6000 men | = cum sex milibus hominum |                                                     |

**Numerals, L. P. § 57. Deponent Verbs, L. P. §§ 76, 90.**

- A. 1. The next day he sets out from the camp with two legions.  
 2. We were following the enemies' cavalry the whole night.  
 3. The same night a very great storm had suddenly arisen.  
 4. He briefly encouraged the soldiers with these words.  
 5. At daybreak he will set out with 5000 horsemen.  
 6. There are now in the camp 1000 horsemen and 3000 foot-soldiers.  
 7. For this cause we lingered for eight days in that town.  
 8. Seven hundred men died that day for their country.  
 9. He obtained suitable weather, and set sail at-the-fourth hour.  
 10. Cicero, a most eloquent man, will speak for his friend.
- B. 1. The consuls were promising great rewards to the soldiers.  
 2. The barbarians had followed our column for-four days.  
 3. Labienus immediately set out with 1000 horsemen.  
 4. Next day, therefore, at daybreak, he moved the camp.  
 5. Six hundred men had already disembarked from the ships.  
 6. The children are dying in the sight of (their) mothers.  
 7. At-the-same time a shout was heard from that direction.  
 8. He had been left in winter-quarters with 2000 men.  
 9. You will not accomplish all these things in-one year  
 10. On-that day I spoke for four hours in the senate.

*Exercise 43.***Personal Pronouns** (L. P. § 61) :

*I* = **ego** ; *we* = **nos** ; *you* (s.), *thou* = **tu** ; *you* (pl.), *ye* = **vos**.  
*he, she, it* = **is, ea, id** (sometimes **ille** or **hic**).

**Pronoun Subject expressed :**

*I love* = **amo** or **ego amo** : the pronoun should be expressed when emphatic, and especially before a Vocative.

**Compound Subject of different persons :**

|           |   |             |   |                    |                               |
|-----------|---|-------------|---|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1st + 2nd | } | = 1st Plur. | { | ego et tu amamus.  | ( <i>Observe the order.</i> ) |
| 1st + 3rd | } |             | { | ego et rex amamus. |                               |
| 2nd + 3rd |   | = 2nd Pl.   |   | tu et rex amatis.  |                               |

N.B.—*with me* = **mecum**, *not cum me* ; so **nobiscum**, **tecum**, **vobiscum**.

- A.
1. You, my friend, have rescued us from very-great danger.
  2. These things are most pleasing to you and to us all.
  3. We, therefore, were pursuing them for many hours.
  4. A great number of them was slain by our men.
  5. You and your brother have great influence among them.
  6. You, Catilina, have been proclaimed an enemy by us.
  7. We have with us a great multitude of captives.
  8. I have been made consul a-second-time by you.
  9. One thousand horsemen and 2000 foot-soldiers started with me.
  10. You and I will take up arms for our fatherland.
- B.
1. We will send ambassadors to them about peace.
  2. This matter is most serious to you and all the citizens.
  3. A very great war has lately been completed by you.
  4. A great multitude of them were marching with us.
  5. The senate has proclaimed you, Antonius, an enemy.
  6. You and Cicero, your friend, will speak for us.
  7. The ambassadors were thrown into chains by them.
  8. They had surrendered the city to us without delay.
  9. Your brother and I will set out at the first watch.
  10. The barbarians had pursued us the whole night.

*Exercise 44.*

**Reflexive Pronoun (3rd Pers.) se.** L. P. § 61.

se = { *himself, herself, itself, themselves* } referring to Subject.  
 { or simply *him, her, it, them* }

*They defend themselves* = se defendunt.

*They took their wives with them* = se-cum (not cum-se).

*Their wives went with them* = cum iis.

N.B.—a mile = 1000 paces = mille passūs  
 two miles = 2000 paces = duo milia passuum } see Ex. 42.

- A. 1. The inhabitants surrendered themselves to him without delay.  
 2. The centurion was defending himself with great courage.  
 3. The Helvetii were carrying corn with them on the march.  
 4. Caesar called-together the merchants to him (Caesar).  
 5. On that day Labienus had proved himself a brave man.  
 6. Meanwhile the Gauls were giving hostages among themselves.  
 7. We advanced with them a few miles from that place.  
 8. The enemy were confining themselves within those woods.  
 9. He had with him 2000 foot and 1000 horsemen.  
 10. This man has spoken for three hours about himself.
- B. 1. These ambassadors will never trust themselves to us.  
 2. The centurion threw himself out of the ship into the sea.  
 3. After this battle the Gauls retreat to the nearest town.  
 4. The consuls have with them a great number of captives.  
 5. All fled and hid themselves in (*say* into) the woods.  
 6. He chose this place for himself for-a-dwelling (*dativē*).  
 7. Our camp was distant about five miles from that river.  
 8. After a few days he will recover himself from (*ex*) fear.  
 9. These have proved themselves the wisest of the citizens.  
 10. In that state three men were contending among themselves.

*Exercise 45.***Possessive Adjective suus.** L. P. § 62, 197.

**suus** = *his, her, its, their* (or *his own, &c.*), referring to the **Subject**.

Suus is declined like bonus (su-us, -a, -um), and agrees in Gender, Number and Case, **not** with the Subject, but with the Noun denoting the **thing possessed**.

*The son loves his mother* = suam matrem.

*The mother loves her sons* = suos filios.

-que = *and*: *by land and sea* = terra mari-que = terra et mari.

*and* (in italics) to be translated by -que.

- A. 1. They burnt all their villages with their (own) hands.  
 2. Our citizens will take-up arms for their liberty.  
 3. He sends a great part of his horsemen across that river.  
 4. The queen had encouraged her (men) with a few words.  
 5. You wage war against the senate *and* the Roman people.  
 6. They have surrendered themselves *and* their children to us.  
 7. Antonius had sent to them his (own) son (as) hostage.  
 8. Caesar made Antonius his master of the horsemen.  
 9. The next day at dawn the barbarians moved their camp.  
 10. After a short time peace was made by the consent of all.
- B. 1. These men will fight bravely for their fatherland.  
 2. The magistrates have the power of life *and* death.  
 3. He had formerly occupied the throne in his (own) state.  
 4. They will surrender themselves *and* their city to you.  
 5. The Germans had led out their forces from the city.  
 6. He is called by his citizens the father of his country.  
 7. Many were slain in sight of their (own) army.  
 8. The queen had promised great rewards to her soldiers.  
 9. He will give his daughter to him in (*say* into) marriage.  
 10. There are very-many islands in that part of the sea.

*Exercise 46.*

## RECAPITULATORY.

- A.
1. These citizens will defend themselves and their children.
  2. You and your father have been made consuls by us.
  3. Nothing more beautiful had ever been seen by him.
  4. We will set out with them at the fourth hour.
  5. Two thousand men died for their country in that battle.
  6. The general will draw-up his line in a suitable place.
  7. He will not trust himself to the inhabitants of that town.
  8. On that day he spoke in the forum for many hours.
  9. The island is distant about twenty miles from the land.
  10. There is great danger ; we have no hope of safety.
  11. The consuls will not undertake so-great a task.
  12. The enemies' cavalry immediately made a charge upon us.
  13. There are 600 horsemen and 3000 soldiers in the camp.
  14. The citizens will not suffer the audacity of this man.
  15. The barbarians were hurling darts from a higher place.
- B.
1. A great number of them come together from all sides.
  2. We have often proclaimed him an enemy of the senate.
  3. The mountains are distant three miles from the river.
  4. You wage war against us and (against) the whole state.
  5. Many were throwing themselves out of the ships.
  6. They were fortifying their town with a higher wall.
  7. He calls the messenger to him and learns the whole matter.
  8. Many of them were already seeking safety by flight.
  9. Our men seize their arms and make a charge on them.
  10. This liberty was handed-down to us by our ancestors.
  11. He therefore sent part of his horsemen across the river.
  12. Your father and I dwelt in that city for many years.
  13. This man is considered the wisest of the citizens.
  14. The barbarians' horsemen were very-troublesome to us.
  15. There is great scarcity of water in that region.

*Exercise 47.*

## INFINITIVE.

**Prolative Infin.**—After verbs such as ‘*desire*,’ ‘*determine*,’ etc.

*They desire to see the city* = *cupiunt urbem videre*.

N.B.—The Inf. of a Transit. Verb may govern an Object.

**Verb Noun Infin.**—Always neuter.

*To lie is disgraceful, or  
It is disgraceful to lie* } = *Turpe est mentiri*.

*Possum* = *I am-able* or *I can*. L.P. § 100.

- A. 1. He determined to draw up his line without delay.  
 2. The barbarians were not able to sustain our charge.  
 3. They were compelled by hunger to surrender themselves  
 4. You, my friends, will not be able to set out with us.  
 5. To die for the fatherland is sweet and honourable.  
 6. These men are said to have fought very bravely.  
 7. The enemies' ships are not able to keep their course.  
 8. We cannot compel him to do all these things.  
 9. Our province is said to be bounded by this river.  
 10. It will be very difficult to defend this city.
- B. 1. They resolved to send ambassadors to him about peace.  
 2. He was ordered to set out at dawn with 1000 men.  
 3. The consuls had not been able to complete that war.  
 4. You, Catiline, will never be able to speak thus.  
 5. The standard-bearer is said to have leapt into the sea.  
 6. You could not expel us from the senate by force.  
 7. Three thousand men are said to have come-together  
     that day.  
 8. To hear these things is always very pleasant to me.  
 9. It will not be easy to rescue them from that danger.  
 10. He determined to lead the tenth legion with him.

*Exercise 48.*

The **Infinitive** of a **Copulative Verb** takes a **Subjective Complement** agreeing with the **Subject**.

*Homer is said to have been blind.*

Dicitur Homerus caecus fuisse.

Similarly, in the Fut. Inf. Act. and Perf. Inf. Pass. the **Participle** (amaturus, amatus) agrees with the **Subject**.

*Rome is said to have been taken by the Gauls.*

Dicitur Roma a Gallis capta esse.

**Volo, Nolo, Malo.** L.P. 104.

- A. 1. We are-unwilling to take-up arms against him.  
 2. This city is said to have been founded by Romulus.  
 3. He wishes to be considered a friend of the Roman people.  
 4. These letters seem to have been written by your brother.  
 5. You and I, my friend, prefer to remain silent.  
 6. The Gauls are said to be about to move their camp.  
 7. The inhabitants of that district desired to be free.  
 8. They were willing to surrender themselves and their children.  
 9. Socrates is reported to have been the wisest of men.  
 10. I wished to say a few words about this matter.
- B. 1. He did not wish to leave an enemy behind his back.  
 2. They are said to have followed our legions for three days.  
 3. He is unwilling to be appointed master of the horsemen.  
 4. The barbarians were beginning to be troublesome to us.  
 5. The queen is believed to have promised rewards to them.  
 6. Antonius ought to be proclaimed an enemy by us.  
 7. They were unwilling to expel him from the city by force.  
 8. A great multitude of them is said to have been killed.  
 9. You and I are unwilling to travel thither with them.  
 10. There was no corn in the fields because of the cold.



*Exercise 49.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## ACTIVE. Present Participle :

audi-ens, -entis (like ingens) = *hearing*.

## Future Participle :

audit-urus, -ura, -urum = *about to hear*.

## PASSIVE. Perfect Participle :

audit-us, -a, -um = *heard or having been heard*.

Participles agree (like ordinary Adj.) with the word which they qualify.

Active Participles of Transit. Verbs take an Object.

*I heard him saying this* = *audivi eum haec dicentem*.

Fero (and Compounds). L.P. § 101.

- A. 1. The messengers sent by Labienus have not yet come.  
 2. Terrified by the shouts, they betook themselves to the woods.  
 3. He chose a place well fortified by nature and by work.  
 4. You have come hither with a multitude of armed (men).  
 5. Being exhausted by wounds, they could not bear our charge.  
 6. The centurion is killed there, fighting very bravely.  
 7. The ships, broken by the storm, are being repaired.  
 8. We pursued the flying enemy about 5 miles. [senate.  
 9. For these causes the matter was referred to (*ad*) the  
 10. He was unwilling to leave the wounded (men) there.
- B. 1. We were pursuing the conquered enemy the whole day.  
 2. The wounded (men) were unable to defend themselves.  
 3. These men, worn-out with age, cannot bear arms.  
 4. You and I have borne these things with an equal mind.  
 5. Being disturbed by these things, he called us to him.  
 6. We saw him bearing help to his wounded brother.  
 7. Caesar ordered all the corn to be brought-back to him.  
 8. Standing in the sight of the senate, they raised their hands.  
 9. Many of the flying (men) betook themselves to the ships.  
 10. No hope of safety will be left for the conquered (men).

## Exercise 50.

**Ipse** is an **Adjective** agreeing with a **Noun** or **Pronoun**.  
**Se** is a **Substantive Pronoun** (3rd Pers. only).

*The queen came herself* regina ipsa venit.

*The queen hid herself* = regina se celavit.

N.B.—**Ipse** (i.) may be in any case; (ii.) may agree with **Pronoun** contained in the **Verb**; (iii.) may be 1st, 2nd or 3rd Person.

i. *I saw the king himself* = regem ipsum vidi.

ii. *He came himself* = ipse venit.

iii. *I did it myself* = ipse feci.

**Deponent Verbs** have all three **Participles**, with **Act.** meaning.

Ex. L.P. 102.

- A. 1. The consuls themselves will return in a few days.  
 2. Having spoken thus, they surrendered themselves to him.  
 3. You yourselves have undergone many dangers for me.  
 4. Having obtained suitable weather, she set-out herself.  
 5. We ourselves had already gone-out from the city.  
 6. They did not hesitate to cross the river themselves.  
 7. Having set out at dawn, he betook himself thither.  
 8. We heard Cicero himself speaking in the senate.  
 9. The general himself with many others perished there.  
 10. The barbarians were giving hostages among themselves.
- B. 1. Having followed them the whole day, we returned.  
 2. The queen herself was going to the temples of the gods.  
 3. Yönder (man) has proved himself a good citizen.  
 4. The letter seems to have been written by the king himself.  
 5. Many were slain (while) trying to defend themselves.  
 6. Having advanced a few miles, they returned to the camp.  
 7. He went away and betook himself to his (own) city.  
 8. We ourselves will undergo all dangers for our country.  
 9. Having encouraged his men, he gave the signal himself.  
 10. She is about-to-go-away herself with 1000 horsemen.

## Exercise 51.

suus = *his, her, its, their* } *i.e.* belonging to the Person denoted  
by the Subject.

ejus = *his, her, its* } *i.e.* belonging to some other Person  
eorum, earum = *their* } than that denoted by the Subject.

*Caesar praised his men* = C. suos milites laudavit.

*We praised his men* = milites ejus laudavimus.

**Fio** (L.P. § 105), *become* or *be made* (a Copul. Verb), supplies **Passive** to **facio**.

*He informed me* = me certiolem fecit.

*I was informed* = certior factus sum.

- A.
1. These men are becoming richer by their industry.
  2. Caesar himself had not-yet ascertained their plans.
  3. We have already been informed about his arrival.
  4. He immediately led his forces into their territories.
  5. They will be made consuls by the help of their friends.
  6. He is informed by his spies about their journey.
  7. Our men were beginning to despair about their safety.
  8. His father had occupied the throne for many years.
  9. His son was killed : he himself escaped death by flight.
  10. We have forbidden fires to be made in the camp.
- B.
1. This work cannot be done without great labour.
  2. They killed our ambassador and cut-off his head.
  3. He has not yet been informed about their plans.
  4. He betook himself to the marshes with his children.
  5. We were ordered to make an attack on their line.
  6. Being informed about this, he set out at dawn.
  7. His father had been appointed master of the horse-men.
  8. By his help you and I have become very rich.
  9. Having spoken these words, he hurled his spear.
  10. Their towns are said to have been burnt by our men.

*Exercise 52.*

## RECAPITULATORY.

- A. 1. He determined to pitch his camp in a fortified place.  
2. His father died that year worn-out with old-age.  
3. Nothing can be more pleasant to me than to live here.  
4. Cicero himself is unwilling to speak for that man.  
5. The town is said to be distant a mile from their camp.  
6. Attracted by the hope of booty, many of them will come.  
7. The inhabitants are said to be about to surrender themselves.  
8. We ourselves heard the cries of the wounded and dying.  
9. He was unwilling to delay longer in their territories.  
10. We saw the general himself fighting very bravely.  
11. It will be very difficult to complete that business.  
12. He has gone away : but he will return in a few days.  
13. He ordered the horsemen to pursue the flying enemy.  
14. Many of them had betaken themselves to the woods.  
15. We wish to be called the friends of the Roman people.
- B. 1. Having set out thither, he found his ships repaired.  
2. Their legates are said to have been thrown into chains.  
3. Terrified by our charge, the Gauls began to retreat.  
4. That nation seems to be very friendly to the Romans.  
5. Caesar had with him a great number of wounded.  
6. They themselves were crossing the river by ships and rafts.  
7. Being informed about the battle, he betook himself thither.  
8. For this cause he could not himself bear help to his (men).  
9. The senate and the Roman people proclaim you an enemy.  
10. Caesar ordered them to go-on-board the ships at-once.  
11. It is always very pleasant to us to hear such things.  
12. We are willing to undergo so-great dangers for you.  
13. You heard Cicero himself speaking in the senate.  
14. Being exhausted by wounds, they could not cross the river.  
15. I have been informed by your brother about that affair.

*Exercise 53.*

|                                 |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>both . . . . . and</i>       | = et . . . et [or -que . . . -que]   |
| <i>either . . . . . or</i>      | = aut . . . aut or vel . . . vel     |
| <i>neither . . . . . nor</i>    | = nec . . . nec or neque . . . neque |
| <i>some . . . . . others</i>    | = alii . . . alii                    |
| <i>one (of two) . the other</i> | = alter . alter                      |

*Both the boy and the girl came* = et puer et puella venerunt.

*Neither the boy nor the girl came* = nec puer nec puella venit.

N.B.—aut . . . aut marks a strong difference, vel . . . vel a slight one.

- A. 1. Some were slain, others sought safety by flight.  
 2. Either these men or those are enemies of the republic.  
 3. They are willing to follow either the one consul or the other.  
 4. These things will be very useful both to me and to you  
 5. We wish either to remain free or to go away hence.  
 6. Neither he nor his brother will be made consul this year.  
 7. All fled, some to the woods, others to the nearest town.  
 8. He found some ships broken by the storm, others unhurt.  
 9. Caesar has both the cavalry and the foot-soldiers with him.  
 10. Neither the old men nor the children can bear arms.
- B. 1. Either Caesar or Pompeius will be expelled from Italy.  
 2. They can neither keep their ranks nor follow the standards.  
 3. Both he himself and his father had occupied the throne.  
 4. Some of them became rich : others remained very poor.  
 5. There is neither corn nor water in that island.  
 6. We resolved either to rescue him or to perish ourselves.  
 7. I hold in the one hand peace, in the other war.  
 8. Not only their strength but also weapons were failing.  
 9. Many were dying, some by disease, others by wounds.  
 10. We pitched our camp on one bank, the Gauls on the other.

*Exercise 54.*

I. Questions introduced by Interrogative Pronouns, Adjectives, or Adverbs.

**Quis?** = who? **quid?** = what? (L.P. 67), used as Substantive.

**Qui, quae, quod** = what — ? „ Adjective.

|                                                                |   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---|
| <i>Who did it?</i> = <b>quis</b> fecit?                        | } |
| <i>What have I done?</i> = <b>quid</b> feci?                   |   |
| <i>What citizen believes it?</i> = <b>qui</b> civis credit?    | } |
| <i>What war have you waged?</i> = <b>quod</b> bellum gessisti? |   |

Other Interrog. Adj. are *quantus* = *how great?* etc.

Interrog. Adverbs are *cur* = *why?* *ubi* = *where?* etc.

See Vocab.

- A.
1. Who was ever more friendly to the Roman people?
  2. How-long will you suffer that man's audacity?
  3. What better gift can be given us by the gods?
  4. Which of the two consuls was slain on that day?
  5. Where are (there) richer cities, more fertile fields?
  6. To whom shall we entrust the safety of the state?
  7. With what weapons can we defend our lives?
  8. Whom shall we send? What forces can we collect?
  9. What can be more pleasing both to me and to you?
  10. Whence do you come? What city do you inhabit?
- B.
1. Who will dare to say such things in this place?
  2. What is sweeter than to die for (one's) country?
  3. By whom were you ordered to burn this city?
  4. Which of these (two) cities seems to you more beautiful?
  5. How long will you wage war against us and the state?
  6. What shall I say about him and his companions?
  7. For what cause has this most bitter war arisen?
  8. What forces has he with him? What is he about to do?
  9. By whose help did you accomplish so great a business?
  10. Whom have you appointed master of the horsemen?

*Exercise 55.*

II. Questions not introduced (in English) by an Interrogative word. One of the following Interrogative particles is used in Latin :

**-ne** (affixed to the first word) Answer doubtful.  
**nonne** (when there is 'not' in English) suggests Ans. **Yes.**  
**num** suggests Ans. **No.**

*Did you see ? = vidisti-ne ?*

*Did you not see ? = nonne vidisti ? = surely you saw.*

*Do you dare ? = num audes ? = surely you don't dare.*

N.B. **-ne** introduces a real question, **nonne** and **num** introduce statements thrown into the form of a question, suggesting but not expecting an answer.

- A. 1. Did I not save this republic by my prudence ?  
 2. Will that man dare to take-up arms against the senate ?  
 3. Have you seen the house lately built by his father ?  
 4. Surely we cannot any longer bear their insolence and audacity.  
 5. Have the inhabitants surrendered themselves to him ?  
 6. Surely the name of liberty is always dear to good citizens  
 7. Have the consuls been informed about his arrival ?  
 8. Where will you find a place so well fortified by nature ?  
 9. Have not their sons deserved well of (*de*) the republic ?  
 10. Shall this city again be besieged by yonder robber ?
- B. 1. Was not Caesar slain by Brutus for this cause ?  
 2. Why do you delay ? the gates lie-open : friends await you.  
 3. Shall we allow this wicked man to remain in the city ?  
 4. Has he not been often called the friend of the Roman people ? [lence of the storms.  
 5. Surely this little ship will not be able to bear the vio-  
 6. Have the barbarians sent ambassadors about peace ?  
 7. Was not this given us by the kindness of the immortal gods ?  
 8. Shall we hesitate to undergo this danger for our state ?  
 9. Did you hear Cicero himself speaking in the senate ?  
 10. Is it not better to die bravely than to fly disgracefully ?

*Exercise 56.*

III. Alternative Questions are introduced in Latin by :

**utrum . . . . an** (*or*)

**-ne . . . . . an** (*or*)

*Are ye friends or foes ?* =  $\begin{cases} \text{utrum amici estis an hostes ?} \\ \text{amici-ne estis an hostes ?} \end{cases}$

The first particle (*utrum* or *-ne*) is often omitted : *or not* = **annon.**

**Num** suggesting Negative answer sometimes stands for **utrum.**

Distinguish **or** in Questions (as above) from **or** in statements.

*Ye are either friends or foes* = **aut amici estis aut hostes.**

- A. 1. Did his brother die of disease or by poison ?  
 2. Shall we send a messenger to him or go ourselves ?  
 3. They will either conquer you or die for their country.  
 4. Did you see the general himself or his brother ?  
 5. Have you been informed about their plans or not ?  
 6. Shall we follow the flying enemy or remain here ?  
 7. Do you prefer to make peace or to wage a long war ?  
 8. He will either become consul or be driven from the city.  
 9. Are you unwilling or are you unable to undertake this ?  
 10. Do they wish to become slaves or to be free citizens ?
- B. 1. Do they throw the blame of this matter on me or on you ?  
 2. Will he send the horsemen or the foot-soldiers across the  
 3. Will they trust themselves to our leader or not ? [river ?  
 4. He was either slain in battle or taken by the enemy.  
 5. Did he occupy the throne in his own state or not ?  
 6. Did you hear this yourself or were you informed by him ?  
 7. He died the same day, worn out by disease or by age ?  
 8. Does he prefer to speak true things or to remain silent ?  
 9. Is the general in the camp or has he set out already ?  
 10. The place was excellently fortified either by nature or  
 by art.



*Exercise 57.*

Commands are expressed thus :

Sing. 2. *Come (thou)* = *veni* Imperative.

3. *Let him come* = *veniat* Pres. Subj.

Plur. 1. *Let us come* = *veniamus* Pres. Subj.

2. *Come (ye)* = *venite* Imperative.

3. *Let them come* = *veniant* Pres. Subj.

A Command (2nd Pers.) may be also expressed (less abruptly) thus : *velim venias* = *I should like you to come* : *fac venias* or *cura ut venias* = *be sure you come*.

- A.
1. Let us take up arms and die for our fatherland.
  2. Hear, my friends, the words of this abandoned man.
  3. Let these speak : let those remain silent or depart.
  4. Cease, Antonius, to wage war upon this republic.
  5. Let authority be given to this man by the senate.
  6. Let us go-on-board the ship and set sail without delay.
  7. Let the consuls remain in the city : do *you* go-forth.
  8. Why do you delay any longer ? Set-out at once.
  9. Let all the gates be closed : let arms be prepared.
  10. Preserve this custom handed-down by our ancestors.
- B.
1. Come, my friends, with me : let us set out immediately.
  2. See, conscript fathers, the audacity of this man.
  3. Let the consuls themselves undertake this matter.
  4. Let rewards be given by us to these brave citizens.
  5. Go, boy : bear this letter to the consul himself.
  6. Let all the citizens defend their life and liberty.
  7. Send round messengers : collect forces : fortify the city.
  8. Let us therefore place all hope of safety in courage.
  9. Speak, thou most abandoned man : let all men hear.
  10. Let the messengers return : do you remain with us.

*Exercise 58.***Negative Commands or Prohibitions.**

|       |                             |               |                    |
|-------|-----------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Sing. | 2. <i>Do not stay</i>       | ne manseris   | <b>Perf. Subj.</b> |
|       | 3. <i>Let him not stay</i>  | ne maneat     | <b>Pres. „</b>     |
| Plur. | 1. <i>Let us not stay</i>   | ne maneamus   | <b>Pres. „</b>     |
|       | 2. <i>Do not stay</i>       | ne manseritis | <b>Perf. „</b>     |
|       | 3. <i>Let them not stay</i> | ne maneant    | <b>Pres. „</b>     |

Negative Commands may also be expressed by the Imperative of *nolo*, followed by an Infinitive.

*Do not remain* = (s.) **noli** manere ; (pl.) **nolite** manere.

- A. 1. Let them not undertake this matter without his consent.  
 2. Do not hesitate, citizens, to expel him by force.  
 3. Let us not therefore miss so great an opportunity.  
 4. Let not their children be led (*adduco*) into slavery.  
 5. Do not, my friend, entrust your safety to those men.  
 6. Let not this place take its name from such a disaster.  
 7. Do not lay aside all hope of safety, my companions.  
 8. Do not speak ; follow your companions without delay.  
 9. Let us not delay ; let us not be called his friends.  
 10. Do not, conscript fathers, despise this applause.
- B. 1. Let not those armed men stand in sight of the senate.  
 2. Do not throw the blame of that matter upon me.  
 3. Let not the consul himself be besieged in his camp.  
 4. Do not attempt to do this work without his help.  
 5. Let not the voices of such men be heard in this temple.  
 6. Do not hesitate to proclaim this man an enemy.  
 7. Place before your eyes, judges, the joy of those women.  
 8. Let us not choose him consul a second time.  
 9. Do you not desire to hear the voice of that orator ?  
 10. Let not this ancient city be betrayed by him.

*Exercise 59.*

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. Our province has been rendered safer by your prudence.
2. In that district there was very great scarcity of corn.
3. The camp had been left entirely empty by the Gauls.
4. The next day he set out from the city with 1000 men.
5. Both you and I are willing to undertake this work.
6. A great multitude of them will march with us.
7. He had with him 200 horsemen and 2000 foot-soldiers.
8. In a few days they will recover themselves from fear.
9. Surely they will surrender themselves and their children  
to us.
10. Nothing more beautiful has been seen in this city.
11. We cannot, therefore, compel him to take up arms.
12. Surely the inhabitants of those islands desired to be free.
13. Exhausted with wounds, they could not bear our charge.
14. We pursued the flying enemy about five miles.
15. Many were slain (while) trying to defend themselves.
16. Having encouraged his men, he gave the signal himself.
17. Had he not been informed about their arrival by his son ?
18. His father had occupied the throne for many years.
19. Surely we wish to be called the friends of the Roman people.
20. Many died, some exhausted by age, others by disease.
21. I am neither able nor willing to start to-day.
22. Antonius wishes peace : let him lay-aside his arms.
23. Set out with me : do not lose so-great an opportunity.
24. Whom can they send ? What help can they bring ?
25. How long shall we suffer this man to remain ?
26. We ourselves heard the cries of the wounded and dying.
27. Are we not all willing to undergo all dangers ?
28. Let us remain in this place and await his arrival.
29. What can be better than to be taught by such a man ?
30. Let us rejoice : a great part of this work has been com-  
pleted.



## PART III.

# THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

N.B.—The various kinds of Dependent Clauses are here dealt with in order,<sup>1</sup> but difficult or exceptional constructions are excluded.

<sup>1</sup> See scheme prefixed to Part II. of Appendix; but observe that in the Exercises Adjectival Clauses are treated first.

## Exercise 60.

## ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES, I. (§ 106.)

**Agreement of the Relative Pronoun.**

The Relative Pronoun **qui, quae, quod** = *who, which, that*, agrees in **Gender, Number and Person** (but not in Case) with its **Antecedent**, *i.e.* the Noun or Pronoun qualified by the Clause.

**Gender and Number.**

Legiones (*fem. pl.*), **quae** (*fem. pl.*) missae sunt, redierunt.  
*The legions, which were sent, have returned.*

**Person.** [Case is treated in next Exercise.]

Nos (1st pl.), **qui** (1st pl.) hoc fecimus, adsumus.  
*We, who did this, are present.*

**Than:** a Comparison may be expressed in Latin thus:

1. With **quam** = *than*: second Noun in same Case as first.
- 2.\* Without **quam**: second Noun in **Ablative**.

Filia pulchrior est { quam mater  
 or matre.\*

*The daughter is fairer than the mother.*

[\*N.B. The second method can only be used when the first Noun is in Nom. or Acc.]

[The references are to §§ of the Syntax.]

- A. 1. Meanwhile the Helvetii, who had retreated either to the mountains or to the woods, began to renew the battle.
2. The work which has been entrusted to you by the magistrates cannot be done without very great labour.
3. The same night (34) we arrived at his camp, which was ten miles distant (35) from the river Rhone.
4. Have you not yourself (52) heard Cicero, who is said to be more eloquent than Hortensius himself?

5. Surely (59) you, who have waged so-many wars, do not wish to blot out the names of those who have died for (39) their country.
  6. Those fields which are now in the power of the enemy are considered more fertile than this region.
  7. The temple of Diana, which is not far from the gate, is higher than the wall of the town.
  8. These things seem more pleasing to me than to you, who have never paid attention to literature.
  9. Are we more cowardly than our ancestors (59)? Shall we cast-away this liberty which has been handed-down to us?
  10. You, Cicero, who have been made consul by the votes of all the citizens, have saved the state this day.
- B.
1. On that day the eyes of all those who were present were turned upon you.
  2. He set out himself (52) with the three legions which had recently been enrolled in Italy by the new consuls.
  3. Shall we not (59) defend this liberty, which is dearer to all good men than life itself?
  4. The war which was then being carried-on in Asia had recently been concluded by the-other consul.
  5. Nothing can be more grievous than this slavery to us, who have lived so-long in a free state.
  6. Attracted by the hope of booty, the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, were crossing into his territories.
  7. You, who have so great influence among (*apud*) the citizens, will without doubt be made consul.
  8. Who was ever more foolish than this youth? He has undertaken a work which will be more difficult than the labours of Hercules.
  9. Meanwhile those ships which had been most-seriously broken by the violence of the storm had been hastily repaired.
  10. You, who were born poor, have now become richer than Crassus himself.

*Exercise 61.*

## ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES, II. (§ 106.)

**Case of the Relative Pronoun.**

The Case of the Rel. Pron. (*qui*) depends on its work in its own Clause: *i.e.* if it stands as Subject it is Nom.; if as Object, Acc.

A. **Subj.** *Legiones, quae missae erant, redierunt.*  
*The legions, which had been sent, returned.*

B. **Obj.** *Legiones, quas miserat, redierunt.*  
*The legions, which he had sent, returned.*

[In both these examples '*which*' = '*legions*.'

In A. '*which were sent*' = '*legions were sent*.'

Here '*legions*' is Subject, therefore '*which*' is Subject (Nom.).

In B. '*which he sent*' = '*legions he sent*' = '*he sent legions*.'

Here '*legions*' is Object, therefore '*which*' is Object (Acc.).]

The other Cases, *i.e.* Gen., Dat., and Abl., offer no difficulty; thus: '*whose*' is Gen.; '*by which*,' Abl., etc.

N.B. Some Verbs which take a direct Object in English do not take the Acc. in Latin, but are followed by Dative, Genit., or Abl. Thus

*Parco huic (not hunc) = I spare this man.* §§ 7-9.

The case required after such Verbs is indicated in the Vocabulary.

- A. 1. Have they not cut down the bridge which they had made themselves (52) with so-great labour?
2. Let us return thanks (56) therefore to the immortal gods, the guardians of this city which you and I inhabit.
3. Believe me: he will not be able to accomplish the business which you have entrusted to him.
4. The place which he had chosen for the camp was admirably fortified both by nature and by art.
5. Meanwhile the Sequani, whose towns were all in the power of Ariovistus, remained silent.



6. The letters which we have received seem to me to have been written either by the consul himself or by his wife.
  7. These men by whom we have been taken are said to be more ferocious than wild-beasts : they spare neither women nor children.
  8. Will you not again take-up arms for (39) that state which you have so-often defended with your voice ?
  9. You, Cicero, by whose prudence the state has been saved, will always be called the father (11) of the country.
  10. These men, to whom the whole matter has been entrusted by the consuls, do not despair of (*de*) safety.
- B.*
1. Does not the moon send on-to the earth the light which she herself received from the sun ?
  2. The barbarians are said to have thrown into chains the ambassadors whom we sent.
  3. Do you not prefer to remain in that liberty which we have received from our fathers (rather) than to obey tyrants ?
  4. Being informed of these things, the inhabitants began to restore their villages, which they had burnt themselves (52).
  5. He spared, however, a certain (man) Commius, whose father had formerly occupied the throne in that state.
  6. What [that which] I have undertaken I will accomplish. What I say is true, believe me.
  7. He therefore called together their chiefs, of whom some (51) were in the camp, others in the neighbouring villages.
  8. At last the three legions, which we had sent-forward, came into sight of his camp.
  9. Even (*etiam*) those who had the greatest experience in these matters were disturbed by the rumour which they heard.
  10. We are unwilling to believe the slaves, by whom we have been informed of this disgraceful calamity.

## Exercise 62.

## ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES, III.

## What.

The Relative Pronoun 'what' = *that which*, or 'the things which.'

*I have done what I could* = *Feci (id) quod potui.*

The Interrogative Pronoun 'what' introduces a question. See Ex. 54.

*What have you done?* = *Quid fecisti?*

## Where, Whence, Whither, etc. § 109.

The Relative Adverbs *ubi* = *where*, *unde* = *whence*, *quo* = *whither*, may introduce Adjectival Clauses, but are of course indeclinable.

*They returned to the place whence they started.*

*Ad locum redierunt, unde profecti erant.*

4. 1. Who will dare to resist you who have so often taken-up arms for the liberty and lives of the citizens?
2. What more grievous (thing) can happen to me? I have lost what is dearer to me than life itself.
3. Do not delay (57). Let us start at once for Africa, whither our friends have already betaken themselves.
4. What hope is left for us? The legions which we are waiting-for (4) have not yet come into sight.
5. They were crossing the river, some by ships, others by rafts, below that place where the bridge had been constructed.
6. Surely (59) you have done what nobody has done before in this city. For this cause many will envy you.
7. What can I say about this matter? These men, who are now begging-for (4) pardon, have sold their fatherland for (39) gold.

- 8; After his death they nevertheless endeavoured to do what they had determined.
  9. Do we not speak of those who are before our eyes, whom we see, or about whom we have often heard ?
  10. Being terrified by these shouts, they threw away what they were carrying, and fled into the neighbouring forest.
  11. Believe me, you will never attain what you are seeking-for (4). Return to the city whence you came.
  12. Those who on-account-of (their) age were not able to bear arms were sent across the river into our province.
- B.*
1. You have taken-away that hope which alone can console us in these adverse circumstances.
  2. What do you wish-for ? What hope have you ? Can you accomplish what you have undertaken ?
  3. Believe me, this place where we stand shall take its name from the disaster of the Roman people.
  4. By the violence of the storm eighteen ships were carried-back to the harbour whence they had set sail.
  5. Is not the city which we have inhabited for (39) so-many years now in the power of that most abandoned man ?
  6. You have the opportunity which you sought-for. What better gift can be given us by the gods ?
  7. Who can pass without tears this house, where the murder of that excellent man took place ?
  8. For this reason we are unwilling to succour these men who are now begging-for (4) assistance.
  9. You, Catilina, who have been declared an enemy (11) of the state, will now at-length be driven from the city.
  10. Some retreated across the river with the booty which they had taken ; others set-out for the town (36).
  11. Surely (59) they are more ferocious than wild-beasts ; they have spared neither the old-men nor the women.
  12. He is said to have sold for a great (price) (39) the books which he had received from his father.

## Exercise 63.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## I Final Clauses (§ 77-80) denote Purpose.

*Open the gates that she may enter in.*

Conjunction: *ut* = *that*, *ne* = *that . . . not*, or *lest*.

Verb of Clause { Present Subjunct. after Primary Tenses.  
 { Imperf. Subjunct. ,, Historic Tenses.

## PRIMARY TENSES.

|       |                     |                                                                                                  |             |
|-------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Pres. | <i>He comes</i>     | } <i>that he may see</i> Vēnit<br>} <i>or in-order-to see</i> Vēnit<br>} <i>or to see</i> Veniet | } ut videat |
| Perf. | <i>He has come</i>  |                                                                                                  |             |
| Fut.  | <i>He will come</i> |                                                                                                  |             |

## HISTORIC TENSES.

|       |                      |                                                                                                        |               |
|-------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Imp.  | <i>He was coming</i> | } <i>that he might see</i> Veniebat<br>} <i>or in-order-to see</i> Vēnit<br>} <i>or to see</i> Venerat | } ut videret. |
| Aor.  | <i>He came</i>       |                                                                                                        |               |
| Plup. | <i>He had come</i>   |                                                                                                        |               |

4. 1. He himself, with the 2000 horsemen whom he had collected, remained on the mainland that he might protect the harbours.
2. After a few days we will return to the city that we may accomplish this work without delay.
3. Meanwhile the town had been burnt by the inhabitants themselves that it might not be taken by siege.
4. Do not believe him, my friends; let us who are present set out by the same road that we may not lose so great an opportunity.
5. I am unwilling to speak for (39) this man lest I should appear unfriendly either to you or to the senate.

6. Are we not waging war by (38) sea and land that we may compel him by force to surrender those provinces ?
  7. Having followed the flying enemy the whole day, they returned in-order-to fortify the camp before night.
  8. Will not the queen herself go to the temple in-order-to return thanks to the immortal gods for so-great benefits ?
  9. I pray you by (38) the gods, let us immediately send corn into the city lest the inhabitants perish by (38) hunger.
  10. He therefore led-round the forces which he had with him, by a longer road (*iter*), in-order-not to be seen by the enemy.
- B.
1. Catilina himself will remain a few days in the city that he may avoid all suspicion.
  2. That night he forbade fires to be made lest our camp should be seen by the Gauls.
  3. Meanwhile he was preparing arms that he might seize the throne in his own state by treachery.
  4. Let us obey these men lest we cast away this liberty handed-down to us by our ancestors.
  5. This was done, not by (38) chance, but that they might throw the blame of that matter on the multitude.
  6. We rely on you, who were made consul by the citizens that you might by your prudence defend the state against him.
  7. I wish, by your leave (38), to say a few words about this matter that you may see the audacity of this man.
  8. Those who are left will be compelled to surrender themselves in-order-not to die by hunger and disease.
  9. Being informed of this matter, we started at dawn in-order-to reach that place before night.
  10. I do not envy you : these fields which I cultivate are by-much more pleasing to me than the noise of the city.

## Exercise 64.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

II. **Consecutive Clauses** (§ 81–84) denote Consequence or Result; they are introduced by ‘*that*,’ and usually correspond to the Demonstratives ‘*so*’ or ‘*such*’ in the Principal Sentence.

‘*I am so feeble that I cannot speak.*’

**Demonstrative** { **Adverbs** : *ita, tam, adeo* = *so*.  
                           { **Adject.** : *tantus* = *so great*, *talis* = *such*.

**Conjunction** : *ut* = *that*, *ut non* = *that . . . not*.

**Verb** : **Subjunctive**, Tense as in English.

*The storm was such (i.e. so great) that we could not sail.*

*Tanta erat tempestas ut solvere non possemus.*

1. Being informed of these things, they advanced with such speed that before night they came into sight of his camp.
2. The matter about which you spoke seems to us so serious that we are unwilling to spare him.
3. So great a calm followed that our ships, laden with soldiers, could not move (3) from that place.
4. The inhabitants had all fled with their wives and children, that they might not be compelled to surrender themselves.
5. So great was the danger, that the consul himself, a man endowed with the greatest (*summus*) valour, gave-up all hope of safety.
6. The king of the barbarians is inflamed with such anger that he has ordered the captives to be beheaded.
7. These fields, which you see, we have cultivated with such diligence that they abound with (48) corn and vines.
8. The place which he chose was so well fortified with a rampart and ditch that our men were not able to break-in.

9. The consul has behaved himself with such prudence that he has been called the father of his country.
  10. Depart from this city with your companions that you may not be driven out by force.
  11. My daughter has married Glaucus, who is said to have become richer than Crassus himself.
  12. Let us spare them ; they are so wretched that they envy the poorest of the citizens.
- B.
1. So great a storm had suddenly arisen that our ships were unable to hold their course.
  2. You yourself have heard Cicero, a man endowed with such ability that no-one of these can be compared with him.
  3. With such valour did the barbarians charge that our men betook themselves to the woods which were not far off.
  4. Believe me, there is such a scarcity of corn in that district that we have been compelled to move our camp, with all the baggage.
  5. The ship which they sent was loaded with so heavy a burden that it was sunk, with all the sailors.
  6. We have so deserved of the Roman people that our children ought (*debeo*) not to be led into slavery in sight of your army.
  7. Let us order the gates to be closed that the slaves may not carry-off the booty with them.
  8. Did he not say these things with so clear a voice that he was easily heard by all who were present ?
  9. Our men were burning (3) with such zeal that they accomplished the work, of which I spoke before, with no trouble.
  10. We, however, have so learnt from our fathers, that we prefer to contend by valour (rather) than by treachery.
  11. Are you so foolish that you do not understand what is clearer than light itself ?
  12. Do not pardon him, I pray you by the gods. Has he not already been declared an enemy of the republic ?

## Exercise 65.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## III. Causal Clauses (§ 85–88), introduced by ‘because’ or ‘since.’

*Then are they glad, because they are at rest.*

## Conjunctions.

quod or quia = *because*, with Indicative.

cum (or quum) = *since* ,, Subjunctive.

Quod regnum appetebat, interfectus est.

*He was put to death, because he was aiming-at the throne.*

Cum impetum sustinere non possent, in montem se receperunt.

*Since they could not stand our charge, they retreated to the mountains.*

Quae cum ita sint (essent) = *since this is (was) the case.*

- A. 1. This man was more friendly to the Helvetii than to us because he had recently married (*duco*) a wife from that state.
2. Since they could not defend themselves from injury, they determined to depart from Italy.
3. Since they had now fought from (41) the seventh hour till evening, their strength was failing from weariness.
4. I set out from the island the same day, because the messengers whom we had sent had not yet returned from Africa.
5. We shall be unable to advance, because our province is divided from their territory by a very wide river.
6. Since by my prudence the state has been freed from so great a danger, let us return thanks to the gods.
7. Since the wind was suitable, we set-sail from the harbour with the ships that were left.
8. He was compelled to desist from this attempt, because there was the greatest scarcity of water in that island.



9. Since this is the case, what can be more agreeable to me than to live here with my friends ?
  10. Since they were unable on-account-of age to bear arms, they retired from the town which we were attacking.
  11. He persuaded them the (*hoc*) more-easily, because the Helvetii are hemmed-in on all sides by the nature of the place.
  12. Is not slavery more grievous than death ? Shall we not therefore try to rescue them from (41) this so great danger ?
- B.
1. We began to despair about our safety, because no news of his return had been brought from the camp.
  2. Since the danger is so great, shall we not take up arms and fight for our fatherland ?
  3. There he pitched his camp, because a town of the Remi was eight miles distant from that place.
  4. Many of those who fled are already dying from hunger, because there is so great a scarcity of food in this district.
  5. Since you cannot restrain your men from plundering, we will not suffer you to travel through our lands.
  6. We cannot advance further to-day, because our slaves have not recovered themselves from (their) fright.
  7. Since you are unwilling to undertake this matter, I myself will speak on-behalf-of this man.
  8. Having set out from Italy, he fled to Sicily, because he feared the hatred of all good citizens.
  9. Friendship is everlasting, because nature cannot be changed. Who will deny it ?
  10. Since by the valour of this man we have been freed from the fear of danger, let us not delay longer.
  11. Since they are unwilling to obey us, let us desist from this attempt and adopt the other plan.
  12. Do not believe this witness : what he says is not true. He wishes to injure me for various reasons.

## Exercise 66.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

IV. **Temporal Clauses** (§ 89–91) indicate the Time of an action or state, and are introduced by the Conjunctions *where, while, after, before, until, etc.*

*When clouds are seen, wise men put on their cloaks.*

**Conjunctions.**

*cum* = *when*, with { **Imperf. and Plup. Subj.**  
**Pres. and Fut. Indic.**

*ubi* = *when* : *postquam* = *after*  
*simul ac* = *as soon as*  
*quotiens* = *as often as*  
*dum, quoad* = *while, as long as* } with Indic.

N.B.— i. *When?* Interrogative is **Quando**, not **Quum**.

ii. Distinguish 'after' and 'before' as Preposit., Advb. and Conjunc.

PREP. *Post paucos annos* = *After a few years.*

ADV. *Paucis post annis* = *A few years after.*

CONJ. *Postquam abiit, redii* = *After he had gone, I returned.*

4. 1. When\* he had said these things with a loud voice, the standard-bearer of the 10th legion threw himself into the sea.
2. On the next day, when† they were informed of his arrival, they pitched their camp on the higher ground.
3. After our cavalry had come [*say* came] into sight, the barbarians turned their backs and sought safety by flight.
4. As soon-as they recovered themselves from (their) terror, they sent ambassadors to Caesar about peace.
5. When\* we had already landed our men and were hastening to the place, a shout was heard on the right.
6. Relying on your help, I remained in the city, and resisted him as-long-as (*quoad*) I could with all my might.
7. When\* we had waited for the horses for three hours, we determined to advance on foot (46).

\* *Cum.*

† *Ubi.*

8. As soon as I returned, I was informed of this conspiracy about which I wrote a few days after (34).
  9. When† he (had) come thither a few hours after, he saw the forces of the enemy drawn-up on (*ad*) the other bank of the river.
  10. When will you inflict punishment on (*de*) these men who have declared war on the senate?
  11. When\* I had already spoken three hours, my voice and strength began to fail me.
- B.
1. After he had drawn up his line-of-battle on the higher ground, he gave the signal and made an attack on them.
  2. While these things are going-on in the camp, the messengers returned whom we had sent on the previous day.
  3. As long as this city shall stand, the names of these men will be held (*habeo*) in great honour among all good citizens.
  4. I will return in a few days, when† I shall have accomplished the task which you have entrusted to me.
  5. After he himself had been expelled from the state on this account, his son occupied the throne for several years.
  6. When\* he had travelled the whole day and was now not far from the town, a messenger came to him.
  7. While we are attacking the city on the one side, the inhabitants are making a sortie from the other gate.
  8. When\* I had been informed of his arrival, I kept-silence on purpose, relying on your prudence.
  9. When\* he had fought on horseback for a great part of the day, he sprang-down from his horse and was fighting on foot.
  10. When shall I see again my native-land, and you, my friends, who are dearer to me than liberty itself?
  11. As soon as he was ordered to go into exile, he obeyed us, but after a few days he returned.

\* *Cum.*† *Ubi.*

*Exercise 67.*

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

V. **Local Clauses** (§ 109) denote the Place of an action or state, and are introduced by the Relative Adverbs *where, whither, whence, &c.*

*Fools rush in, where angels fear to tread.*

Adverbial Clauses of Place are constructed in the same way as Adjectival Clauses of Place. See Ex. 62.

*Rediit unde profectus erat.*

*He returned (thither) whence he had started.*

- A. 1. Having started from Tusculum at day-break, we arrived at Rome at mid-day.
2. Believe me, these things which you laugh-at here, are valued at a very high (price) (37) at Massilia.
3. I am unwilling to remain at home any-longer ; I intend therefore to set out for Spain in a few days.
4. Where there is smoke, there fire will be found. Do not, therefore, pardon him without just cause.
5. A few days afterwards we went away into the country in order to enjoy leisure after so many labours.
6. I was compelled to remain a few days at Corinth, because the business which I had undertaken was not completed.
7. Having been chosen general with two others, Alcibiades set out from Athens for Sicily, where the war was going-on.
8. Having been born at Athens, he came to Italy in the twenty-first year of his age, and died at Ancona two years after.
9. We were waiting for thirteen days at Brundisium, but on the fourteenth day, having got a fair wind, we set sail.

10. Themistocles, having been banished from his own city, fled to Asia, and is said to have died at Magnesia.
  11. His bones were afterwards secretly brought back from Asia by his friends, and buried in Greece.
  12. Whither thou goest [*say* shalt go] I will go ; where thou diest [*shalt* die] I will die also.
- B.
1. We travelled the whole night with the utmost speed, and arrived at Capua the next day at the ninth hour.
  2. He himself was aiming at the throne which his ancestors had held a few years before (34).
  3. Being informed of these facts (*res*) Caesar started from Gaul for Britain with that legion which he had with him.
  4. These books, which I bought at Tarentum a few years ago at a high price, are now valued at very little.
  5. Since Tullia is in the country, we are unwilling to go home before dawn. Let us rejoice therefore.
  6. In three months he will return to Italy, whence he set out for Carthage three days ago.
  7. As soon as Verres arrived in Sicily, he sent these letters from Messana which I am about to read.
  8. Let us either remain where we are, or let us go whither our wives and children have betaken themselves.
  9. After he had with the utmost difficulty crossed the Alps, Hannibal defeated the Roman army at (37) the river Trebia.
  10. Where the honey is, thither will the bees come together : what is sweeter than honey ?
  11. We lingered several months at Athens, where Socrates, who is considered the wisest of the Greeks, was then living.
  12. To whom shall we entrust this most difficult business ? The consul himself has gone away from home.

## Exercise 68.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

VI. **Conditional Clauses** (§ 92–96) are introduced by ‘*if*, ‘*if . . . not*,’ or ‘*unless*.’

*If ye have tears, prepare to shed them now.*

Lat. **Conjunctions** : *si* = *if*, *nisi* = *if . . . not*, *unless*.

**Mood.** The Mood of the Clause Verb depends on that of the Principal Sentence : thus

| PRINCIP. VERB.                | CLAUSE VERB. |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| A. Indic. (or Imperat.) . . . | Indic.       |
| B. Subjunctive . . . . .      | Subjunctive. |

- A. *If you ask, I answer* = *Si rogas, respondeo.*  
*If you are well, rejoice* = *Si vales, gaude.*
- B. *If he had come, he would have seen* = *Si venisset, vidisset.*

[In this Ex. the *tense* of Condit. Cl. is indicated by the English.]

1. If he had behaved himself in (42) this manner in Africa, he would have completed the war in a few days.
2. The enemy would without doubt have got-possession-of the baggage, if this legion had not remained in the camp.
3. If no wrong has been done to you by this man, you cannot accuse him without great wickedness.
4. In appearance he is poor, but, unless I am mistaken, he has in reality become very rich.
5. If what the messengers say is true, this nation of which we are speaking surpasses all the Gauls in valour.

6. Believe me, you would have arrived at that city in a few hours if you had set out from Capua at day-break.
7. Having been informed of his arrival, we sent out messengers in all directions.
8. Do not therefore let-slip so great an opportunity, unless you wish to become slaves in reality.
9. What would you have said if you had yourself seen the children dying in the sight of their fathers ?
10. Since this danger can in no way be avoided, let us take-up arms for the city which we inhabit.

- B.
1. If our consul, a man very skilled in war (42), has in truth been beaten in battle, no hope of safety is [has been] left for the city.
  2. If you wish to preserve the liberty which you have received from your ancestors, follow me.
  3. We should easily have taken the place in a few hours if only (*modo*) the cavalry had shown (*praesto*) their usual bravery.
  4. Unless this district is very fertile in corn, we shall soon be compelled by hunger to move our camp.
  5. If you had yourself heard the groans of the dying and wounded, you would not have spoken in this manner.
  6. That I may not appear ungrateful to you I intend [I have in mind] to undertake this work myself.
  7. As soon as we came in sight of his camp he drew up his line and gave the signal.
  8. Unless the messenger whom we have sent returns [shall have returned] in three hours, we shall start ourselves.
  9. The whole city would have been destroyed by fire, if the consuls had not displayed the greatest prudence.
  10. Shall we suffer this man, whom you have yourselves condemned, to remain within these walls ?

## Exercise 69.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

VII. **Concessive Clauses** (§ 97–99) are introduced by ‘*though*,’ ‘*even if*,’ &c.

*Angels are bright still, though the brightest fell.*

**Conjunctions.**

**Quamquam** = *though, although*, with Indic.

**Quamvis** = *however (much)* ,, Subj.

**Etsi** = *though, even if* ,, Indic. or Subj.

according to the mood of the Principal Verb. See Ex. 68.

*Quamquam fessi erant, procedebant.*

*Though they were weary, they went forward.*

*Quamvis sis molestus, nunquam confitebor.*

*However troublesome you may be, I will not confess.*

[See §§ 44, 45.]

- A. 1. Though many of the inhabitants are dying of (45) hunger, yet we do not altogether despair of safety.
2. Though the tops of (45) the mountains are said to be covered with snow in summer, the whole of the valley is full of flowers.
3. It is (the duty) of a good citizen to take up arms for his country, however great the danger may be.
4. Though he had been born of humble parents, he was twice created consul by his fellow-citizens.
5. Though the island of Britain was not far off, he determined to demand hostages of the Gauls.
6. Labienus, a man of the greatest prudence, was at that time in command of the legions which we sent forward.
7. Will you suffer this man to deprive us not only of our liberty, but also of our lives ?
8. Though the whole of Campania is in his power, the city of Capua has not yet been surrendered.



9. Of their own accord they were demanding help of their allies, though they had not yet heard of this calamity.
10. Clothed in black robes, the queen herself went on foot through the middle of the city to the temple.
11. Though Cicero himself, a man of the highest ability, has spoken against you, the judges will pardon you.
- 12: Surely (59) these men, who have deserved well of the republic, are worthy of the highest praise.

- B.*
1. Though the whole of that district had been wasted by the enemy, there was no scarcity of corn in our camp.
  2. Though he had not been informed of their plans, he was unwilling to advance, because he was afraid of treachery.
  3. The temple of Minerva, placed on the top of the citadel, remained unhurt, though the rest of the city was burnt.
  4. Since 2000 men had already died of disease, the rest of the citizens were beginning to despair of safety.
  5. Having got possession of the city of Capua, Hannibal remained in that district the whole of the winter.
  6. Though it was a task of the greatest difficulty, Hannibal led his forces across the top of the mountains into Italy.
  7. Though you have been convicted of this crime, yet on account of your services we are unwilling to deprive you of liberty.
  8. Though the ships were made of very thick timber, such was the violence of the storm that many of them were shattered by the waves.
  9. When he observed this, the standard-bearer, a man of the highest courage, threw himself into the sea.
  10. Though they are worthy of the severest punishment, let us spare them, lest we appear ungrateful.
  11. For those reasons which I have mentioned, he placed a tower on the end of the bridge which he had made.
  12. Meanwhile that legion which he had sent forward, having advanced a few miles, seized the top of the hill.

## Exercise 70.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

VIII. Comparative Clauses (§ 100-104) are introduced by 'as,' 'as if,' 'than,' often corresponding to a Demonstrative 'so,' 'such,' etc. in Princ. Sent.

*As the tree falls, so shall it lie.*

| DEMONSTR.                     | CONJUNCT. | DEMONSTR.            | CONJUNCT.    |          |
|-------------------------------|-----------|----------------------|--------------|----------|
| so [manner] . . . . .         | as        | sic or ita . . . . . | ut           | } Indic. |
| so (or as) [degree] . . . . . | as        | tam . . . . .        | quam         |          |
| so (or as many) . . . . .     | as        | tot . . . . .        | quot         |          |
|                               |           | as if . . . . .      | quasi, Subj. |          |

[For other Comparative Conjunctions, etc., see § 102.]

Ita fecit, ut constituerat = *he did as he had resolved.*

Clamabat, quasi insaniret = *he cried out as if he were mad.*

N.B. i. *As possible* = **quam** with **Superlative** with or without **possum**.

Quam maximas (potuit) copias coegit.

*He gathered as many troops as he could, or as possible.*

ii. The Ablative of Comparison (see Ex. 60) can only be used when the Comparison is between two Nouns (or Pronouns).

- A. 1. His camp extended more than eight miles in [into] width, as was indicated by the fires which we saw.
2. They preferred to remain in that liberty which they had received from their ancestors than to endure such slavery.
3. Mithridates fled as quickly as possible from his kingdom, as Medea is said to have once fled from Pontus.
4. As he has lived, so let him die. Has he not so lived that no one can pity him?

5. Surely it is better to perish a-thousand-times than not to be able to live without a garrison of armed men.
  6. This place, as was afterwards learnt from the captives, was five miles distant from the sea.
  7. Do not undertake this business : have you not already accomplished as many labours as Hercules (accomplished) ?
  8. After they heard of the victory, they were as desirous of war as they had been (desirous) of peace.
  9. Unless I am mistaken, nothing is dearer to you than the republic, nothing sweeter than true glory.
  10. The (*quo*) longer I consider (*considero*, 1), the (*eo*) more-obscure the matter seems to me. I prefer to do nothing than to act rashly.
- B.
1. On the following day he set out for Italy, as he had been accustomed to do every-year.
  2. Meanwhile, as we have shown (*demonstro*, 1) above, he was waiting for their arrival in that place which he had appointed.
  3. The top of the citadel is, as I have said, higher than the roof of the temple in which they were sitting.
  4. As Helen was once a cause of war to the Trojans, so this man is a cause of destruction (*exitium*) to this state.
  5. Although his forces were greater than ours, our legions fought as bravely as possible.
  6. If what you tell me is true, you are now as foolish as you were wise three days ago.
  7. There are as many men in the forum to-day as there were on that day on which the consuls triumphed.
  8. What is stronger than a lion ? What is sweeter than honey ? Can you answer me ?
  9. He collected as much corn as possible, that he might not be forced to move his camp before the winter.
  10. Believe me, I do not envy her, though the man (107, b) whom she has married is as rich as Crassus was.

*Exercise 71.*

## SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

- I. **Indirect Statement** (§ 61–67), *i.e.* a Clause introduced by ‘*that*’ (often omitted) and standing as *Object* to such words as ‘*say*,’ ‘*know*,’ ‘*think*,’ etc., or as *Subject* to ‘*it is agreed*,’ etc.

*We know (that he has come).* Object Clause.

*(That he has come) is certain.* Subject Clause.

**Rule.**—‘*That*’ is not translated into Latin.

The **Subject** of the Clause is in **Accusative**.

The **Verb**        ”        ”        ”        **Infinitive**.

*Scio (regem venisse) = I know that the king has come.*

[For the Tense of the Infin. see § 63.]

## PRELIMINARY EXERCISE.

1. We have heard that the barbarians are waging war. 2. He will say that many have fled. 3. I believe that the messengers will return. 4. They said that the consul was travelling. 5. We heard that you had come. 6. We had been informed that he (65, *d*) would escape. 7. I know that the place is being fortified. 8. You will hear that the ships have been sent. 9. They say he (65, *d*) has set out. 10. You promised that you would follow. 11. I hear the region is fertile. 12. I saw that he was scrowful. 13. He promised that he (65, *d*) would speak. 14. They said they had found-out the cause.
- A. 1. The messengers whom we sent forward report that a great multitude of men are hastening in that direction.
2. Has not the consul himself told us that Catiline has made a conspiracy in order to deprive us of our liberty?
3. For this reason we hope that you will not hesitate to take up arms for your country.

4. When he came thither he learnt that the towns were being burnt by the inhabitants themselves.
  5. We have been informed that many of the ships have been sbattered by the violence of the storm.
  6. All who were present on that day believed that he (65, *d*) would undertake the matter.
  7. I hear that your brother has started for Italy and will wait for you at Brundisium.
  8. Since they saw that the matter was very difficult, they said they (65, *d*) were unwilling to follow.
  9. Having been informed that they (65, *d*) were being besieged, he promised that he would send help as quickly as possible.
  10. When they heard this they replied that it was not the custom of the Roman people to give hostages.
- B.*
1. Do you not perceive that this man has very great influence among the inhabitants ?
  2. All men believe that Hannibal has already crossed the tops of the mountains with a vast army.
  3. When he had travelled for several days he learnt that the whole of the city had been burnt.
  4. If I had known that he had already set out from Brundisium I should have remained at home.
  5. As soon as he saw that they were armed with swords he cried-out that he had been betrayed.
  6. When he perceived that the matter was serious he promised that he would undertake the task.
  7. Having advanced a few miles, he perceived that the plain was bounded on all sides by high mountains.
  8. He knew they were not far off, for they had promised they would return in a few days.
  9. What can I say ? Are you so ignorant that you do not know that Britain is an island ?
  10. They say that Endemus is so seriously ill that all the doctors are despairing of his life.

*Exercise 72.*

## SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

II. **Indirect Question** (§ 68–72), *i.e.* a Clause introduced by an Interrogative and standing as

1. OBJECT. *We do not know (who did this).*
2. SUBJECT. *It is doubtful (who did this).*

**Rule :**

**Interrogative**, as *quis = who? cur = why? etc.*

**Verb, Subjunctive** : Tense as in English.

*Quaero quid faciat = I ask what he is doing.*

N.B.—A Fut. Subjunct. is formed by Fut. Partic. with ‘*sim*’ or ‘*essem*.’

*Quaero quid facturus sit = I ask what he will do.*

*Quaesivi quid facturus esset = I asked what he would do.*

Distinguish the two uses of *who*, *which*, *when*, etc. :

- (1) as Interrogatives introducing an Indirect Question ;
- (2) as Relative Pronouns or Conjunctions introducing Adjectival or Adverbial Clauses.

*Int. I wonder (who did it). Rel. I saw the man (who did it).*

1. We know who he is, why he went away, what he has done, and when he will return home.
2. We will inquire of the merchants whence they have come, and for what cause they are present.
3. Have you not heard what has been done? Do you not see how great a multitude of men has come together?
4. Having been informed that the conspirators had been thrown into chains, he inquired where the consul himself was.
5. He could neither find out what nations were inhabiting that island, nor what experience of war they had.
6. If I had known how-great the danger was, I would never have told you in what place gold had been concealed.

7. Whether (71, *h*) this is true or false I cannot find out, but I will show you what I wish to be done.
  8. All who had heard him perceived that the man was so stupid that he did not know by which road he had come.
  9. Since this is the case, I ask of you for what reason you are unwilling to seek the consulship ?
  10. We will inflict punishment on all who were present, since we cannot find who spoke these words.
  11. When we arrived at the city we inquired of the sentinel when they were going-to-shut the gates.
  12. You see how great an opportunity you have ; you know how sweet liberty is to all good citizens.
- B.*
1. When we had advanced a few miles we inquired of the captives in what place the enemy had pitched the camp.
  2. I do not ask of you why Roscius killed his father. I ask when and how he killed him.
  3. A few days after, the messengers whom we had sent returned and reported what they had seen.
  4. I know that he read a certain letter in the senate, but I do not know by whom that letter had been written.
  5. I cannot compel your brother to tell me for what reason he behaves himself in this manner.
  6. He ordered spies to be sent out, that he might learn what was going-on among the Sequani.
  7. Believe me, in a few days all the citizens will know how-great a calamity you have brought upon the state.
  8. Being asked whether he had heard a shout, he denied that he had been present on that day.
  9. Do not undertake this task without his help. You do not know how great the difficulty will be.
  10. We see that the image has been broken ; let us therefore inquire who has committed so great a crime.
  11. We wish to be informed what legions he has with him, how many ships he has prepared, and when he will start,

## Exercise 73.

## SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

III. Indirect Command (§ 73-76), *i.e.* a Clause standing as Object or Subject to such Verbs as 'command,' 'advise,' 'beg,' etc.

*He begged (that they would remain).*

Rule (same as for Final Clauses).

Conjunction: *ut* = *that* : *ne* = *that . . . not*.

Verb of Clause { Pres. Subjunct. after Primary Tenses.  
Imperf. Subjunct. after Historic Tenses

*Monet ut eamus* = *he advises us to go* (= *that we may go*).

*Monuit ut iremus* = *he advised us to go* (= *that we should go*).

N.B.—Some Verbs of command, as *jubeo*, are followed by the Infin. instead of a Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. See § 76.

4. 1. Since this was the case, he persuaded his fellow-citizens to go-forth from their city as quickly as possible.
2. Having spoken these words, they advised all who were present not to adopt this plan.
3. Although we well know how great the danger is, we exhort you not to let slip so great an opportunity.
4. Have you not heard that I have persuaded your father to travel with me to Spain?
5. Being greatly angered, he demanded of the inhabitants that the sons of the chiefs should be given up.
6. He commanded Labienus, whom he had left in Gaul with three legions, to use the utmost diligence.
7. We have persuaded a certain slave, by the hope of liberty, to carry these letters to the general.
8. Since I perceived that he was unfriendly to me, I begged him to pardon me and forget the injury.



9. When they heard what had happened they exhorted the citizens to remain at home the whole day.
  10. While these things are going on the senate decreed that the consuls themselves should start at-once.
  11. You have compelled us to adopt this plan ; we cannot, therefore, suffer you to enjoy your leisure.
  12. Though he knew that the Gauls were ten miles distant, he ordered his men to fortify the place with a rampart.
- B.
1. Since he did not dare to remain silent, he advised that we should demand hostages of the enemy.
  2. I therefore entreat you not to suffer this city to come into the power of that most abandoned man.
  3. When he learnt that the day of trial was at-hand, he contrived that the witnesses should be destroyed (*absumo*, 3) by poison.
  4. Relying on your assistance, I demand that the conspirators be thrown into chains at-once.
  5. Since this is the case, we have persuaded your brother to sell his house and start for Africa with us.
  6. Being bidden (*jubeo*) to throw away his arms, he does it, and commands his comrades to do the same (thing).
  7. We hear that the senate has to-day decreed that Antonius be declared an enemy of the state.
  8. We therefore exhort you to prefer (*antipono*) friendship to all human things.
  9. Caesar demanded of Ariovistus that he should not lead a multitude of men across the Rhine.
  10. For this cause I beseech and entreat you, judges, to listen to my words attentively.
  11. I beg of you to inform your friends that my daughter has married Piso, a man of the highest ability.
  12. Surely he is worthy of death ; will you suffer a man of such-great wickedness to live ?

*Exercise 74.*

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. I.

The circumstances under which an action takes place are often indicated in Latin by the Ablative Absolute, *i.e.* a Noun (or Pronoun) with a Participle standing together in the Ablative Case. § 21.

**Duce vulnerato, milites fugerunt.**

*The leader being wounded, the soldiers fled.*

**Caution.**

The Abl. Absol. cannot be used when the Noun with which the Participle would agree forms any part (Subject, Object, &c.) of the principal sentence. Compare the following :

**Regibus exactis, consules creati erant.**

*(The kings having been driven out) consuls were created.*

**Reges, exacti, in Etruriam se contulerunt.**

*The kings (having been driven out) fled to Etruria.*

- A. 1. The signal having been given, our men charged with such valour that the barbarians could not keep their ground.
2. All things being already prepared, they crossed the Rhone by ships and rafts below that place where the bridge had been made.
3. The slave having been questioned about this matter, said that he had shut the gates at the third hour.
4. Being exhausted by hunger and disease, they would have all perished if we had not brought help.
5. A great part of the city having been burnt, the inhabitants betook themselves to the neighbouring woods.
6. A shout having been heard, they halted, and, stricken with terror, fled as quickly as possible.
7. Being greatly disturbed by these letters, he begged his friends not to go to the senate house on that day.

8. These things having been ascertained, I did not hesitate to send the money which he demanded.
  9. All who were able to bear arms set out for the camp, the women and children being left behind.
  10. These men, being worn out with old age, cannot accomplish the work which they have undertaken.
  11. Meanwhile the children, being terrified by these cries, begged their father to remain at home.
  12. After they had followed the flying enemy for three hours, they returned to the camp, a few wounds having been received.
- B.*
1. The bridge having been cut down, he was compelled to lead round his men by a longer route.
  2. Those who were present, being terrified by the shouts, supposed that a great disaster had been received.
  3. The anchor having been raised, they set sail at the third watch, and reached the island of Britain safe.
  4. A few days after (34), the senate having been called together, Cicero spoke vehemently against Catiline.
  5. All hope of safety being now abandoned, the inhabitants promised that they would surrender the city.
  6. Many of these ships, having been thrown-back by the violence of the storm, were unable to reach the harbour.
  7. This man, prompted by ambition, had persuaded the nobles to conspire against the republic.
  8. This youth, having been sent to Athens by his father, was instructed by Atticus, a man of great ability.
  9. The camp having been fortified, Caesar commanded Labienus to set out with the tenth legion.
  10. A great part of the summer being now spent, we advised him not to remain longer in that place.
  11. The war having been concluded at last, the inhabitants enjoyed peace for many years.
  12. This having been done, we ran as quickly as possible in that direction whence the cry had been heard.

*Exercise 75.*

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. II.

As there is no Perfect Participle Active in the Latin Verb, an English Perfect Participle Active can only be translated directly by a Deponent Participle: thus, '*having spoken*' = locutus; but there is no word for '*having loved*,' '*having seen*,' etc.

When there is no corresponding Deponent Verb, an English Perf. Participle with its Object can often be translated by throwing the phrase into the Passive form and using the Abl. Absol., thus: '*having given the signal*' may be turned into '*the signal having been given*,' signo dato. See below, *C*.

Compare the following:—

- A. Dux, haec verba locutus, signum dedit.  
*The general, having spoken these words, gave the signal.*
- B. Duce haec verba locuto, signum datum est.  
*The general having spoken these words, the signal was given.*
- C. Dux, signo dato, proelium commisit.  
*The general, having given the signal, joined battle.*
- A. 1. Having followed them the whole of the day, we returned home in the evening exhausted with fatigue.
2. The judge, having ascertained these facts, inquired of us whether we were willing to pardon them.
3. The barbarians, having drawn their swords, charged with such valour that our men could not keep their ground.
4. A great storm having arisen, many of the ships were driven back to the same place whence they had set sail.
5. Having lingered at Athens a few days, he determined to return home in order to avoid suspicion.
6. When we reached the top of the mountain, the sun having risen, we saw the valley filled with a vast multitude.

7. Having turned my eyes in that direction, I saw him lying in the middle of the road.
  8. Having vehemently exhorted the judges not to believe these witnesses, he at length sat down.
  9. Having accomplished the business in this way, we found that neither he nor his wife had heard about this affair.
  10. Caesar, having landed his soldiers, pitched his camp in the place which he had chosen before.
  11. Meanwhile they had repaired a few ships, having used the timber of those which had been most seriously shattered.
  12. Then all those who were present, having raised a great shout, demanded that he should be acquitted.
- B.*
1. At last, having attempted in vain to find out what he was going to do, I went away sad.
  2. The inhabitants, having burnt all their villages, betook themselves as quickly as possible to the middle of the woods.
  3. Next day, having obtained suitable weather, he set sail at the third hour from that harbour of which we spoke.
  4. Having hastily called together a council, the general pointed out how great the danger was.
  5. At length, having abandoned all hope of safety, the inhabitants determined to break-out of the city.
  6. Your brother, having received this letter, hastened to Rome to ascertain what had been done.
  7. My friend and his son, having heard this, replied that they had seen her sitting in that place.
  8. Caesar, having ascertained their plans, determined to start as soon as possible, in order not to be surrounded.
  9. Having advanced about ten miles, we reached a place which seemed to us tolerably suitable.
  10. Has he not brought back his fleet unhurt, having finished the war in a few days?
  11. The father and mother having died, the son became a soldier, the daughter married a rich man.
  12. The whole of that region having been wasted, we could find neither corn nor fodder.

## Exercise 76.

## VERB NOUN AND GERUND.

The Verb Noun in *-ing* standing as Subject or Object is expressed by the Latin Infin. ; otherwise by the Gerund.

The Verb Noun may therefore be declined thus (*Neut.*):

|                              |                                                                     |                   |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>Nom.</b> ( <i>Subj.</i> ) | Scribere est utile = <i>writing is useful.</i>                      |                   |
| <b>Acc.</b>                  | { ( <i>Obj.</i> ) desine scribere = <i>stop writing.</i>            | }                 |
|                              | { ( <i>with Prep.</i> ) ad scribendum paratus = <i>prepared for</i> |                   |
| <b>Genit.</b>                | amor scribendi = <i>the love of</i> . . . . .                       | } <i>writing.</i> |
| <b>Dat.</b>                  | dat operam scribendo = <i>he pays attention to</i> . . . . .        |                   |
| <b>Abl.</b>                  | scribendo discimus = <i>we learn by</i> . . . . .                   |                   |

## Caution.

Distinguish words ending in *-ing* :

**Pres. Participle.** *I heard them talking.*

**Verb Noun.** *Talking is useless.*

1. When he had made an end of speaking, all who were present begged him not to adopt that plan.
2. Having ascertained these facts, he replied that he would take a day for deliberating.
3. We know that Roscius was slain returning from supper ; but we do not know by whom he was slain.
4. Believe me, my friends ; cultivating the fields is more useful than (*quam*) waging war in a distant land.
5. Having advanced a few miles for the sake of plundering, they were surrounded by the enemy's cavalry.
6. His friends standing-round listened-to him arguing about living well and happily.
7. I know that you are very fond of writing, but I advise you to pay attention to reading.

8. When they reached the middle of the city they found the old men sitting in the forum clothed in white robes.
  9. Having heard this, our men were so desirous of fighting that they could scarcely be kept within the camp.
  10. He who teaches others, himself becomes more learned by teaching. Who will deny this ?
  11. Having obtained suitable weather for sailing, he determined on crossing to Britain the same night.
- B.
1. Having accomplished this business, he spent the whole night in reading and writing.
  2. Attracted by the hope of plundering, the barbarians began crossing the river as quickly as possible.
  3. You have heard him speaking. What can be pleasanter than (*quam*) listening to his voice ?
  4. Having abandoned all hope of safety, the centurion was slain fighting very bravely.
  5. The pleasure which we receive from learning is very great. Do not forget these words.
  6. Since he was unskilled in sailing, he begged that he might be left on the mainland.
  7. I intend remaining in Athens for several years for the sake of studying Greek literature.
  8. Having suddenly made a sortie, our men gave the enemy no chance of ascertaining what was going on.
  9. If you had followed him on that night, you would have seen these abandoned men already sharpening their swords.
  10. I know that the city is very pleasing to you, but I prefer living in the country.
  11. The anchors and the rest of the tackle being lost, the ships were useless for (*ad*) sailing.

## Exercise 77.

## GERUNDIVE ATTRACTION (§ 26).

The Gerundive is an Adjectival form of the Gerund.

The **Gerundive Attraction** is used instead of the Gerund with a direct Object in the Accus., thus :

*instead of* petendi pacem } = *of seeking peace.*  
*write* pacis petendae }

The Object takes the case of the Gerund, and the Gerundive then agrees with it in Gender, Number, and Case, thus :

|                 | GERUND + OBJECT. |                | GERUNDIVE ATTRACTION. |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Acc.</b>     | ad dandum pacem  | <i>becomes</i> | ad pacem dandum.      |
| <b>Gen.</b>     | dandi pacem      | ,,             | pacis dandae.         |
| <b>Dat.</b>     | dando pacem      | ,,             | paci dandae.          |
| <b>Abl.</b>     | dando pacem      | ṛ              | pace danda.           |
| <b>Acc. Pl.</b> | ad dandum leges  | ,,             | ad leges dandas.      |

N.B.—The Gerundive Attraction cannot be used except where the Verb governs an Accusative : thus, *by sparing the men* = *parcendo viris*, *not viris parcendis*.

- A. 1. We have been informed that these abandoned men have formed the design of burning the city.  
 2. For the sake of avoiding the heat they generally seek the neighbourhood of woods and rivers.  
 3. Having heard this, they replied that they were prepared for (*ad*) undergoing all dangers.  
 4. This, however, was done so quickly that no opportunity was given us of leaving the place.  
 5. He used the timber and copper of those ships which had been shattered for (*ad*) repairing his own (ship).  
 6. Who of you will deny that elegance of speaking is increased by reading the orators and poets ?



7. Unless this law had been carried (*fero*) I should have abandoned all hope of saving the state.
  8. He found out by-means-of spies that this day had been appointed (*dico*) for attacking the winter-quarters.
  9. I wish to ask you in the presence of all, what is your opinion about undertaking this task.
  10. You see how great an opportunity is given us of crushing this conspiracy.
  11. Has not this man deserved well of the republic? Have you not yourselves said that he is worthy of the highest praise?
- B.
1. They burnt their towns and villages themselves, that they might be prepared for (*ad*) undergoing all dangers.
  2. Having ascertained this, we determined to remain at home a few days for the sake of avoiding suspicion.
  3. Can you deny that in carrying on this war Lentulus has shown himself worthy of the highest praise?
  4. By sparing these captives you will win great popularity among the inhabitants of that district.
  5. He had lived in this land so long that he was beginning to abandon all hope of seeing his native-land.
  6. Why do you hesitate? What opportunity (*locus*) of proving (*probo*, 1) your valour are you waiting for?
  7. Having spent a great part of the summer in managing these affairs, he returned home a few days ago.
  8. By diligently cultivating his paternal fields, yonder man has become richer than the consul himself.
  9. The consul then informed the senate that a plan for [*say* of] destroying the city had been discovered.
  10. Being asked why he was hesitating, he replied that he was quite ready for waging war.
  11. Though you are very skilled in speaking, you will never persuade us to pardon them.

## Exercise 78.

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE (§ 27-29).

The Nominative Gerund (-dum) of Intransitive Verbs (see N.B. i.) and the Gerundive (-dus, -da, -dum) of Transitive Verbs are used with *est*, *erat*, *erit*, etc., to denote that an action *must* or *ought* to be done.

The person who has to do the action is denoted by a Dative of the Agent (N.B. ii.).

N.B. i.—Intransitive Verbs include Transit. Verbs used without an Object, and also Verbs governing Genit., Dat., and Abl.

## A. Gerund of Intransitive Verbs.

*I must* (or *ought to*, or *have to*) *run* = mihi currendum est.

*I had to go* (or *ought to have gone*) = mihi eundum erat.

*I must use this plan* = hoc consilio mihi utendum est.

N.B. ii.—If the Gerund governs a Dative, use Abl. of Agent for the Person, to avoid confusion: *I must spare you* = Tibi a me parcendum est.

## B. Gerundive of Transitive Verbs.

1. When the English sentence is in Passive form translate it directly, thus :

*Virtue is to be praised* (by us) = Virtus laudanda est (nobis).

*Ships had to be sent* = Naves mittendae erant.

2. When the English sentence is in Active form turn it into Passive, thus :

*We ought to till the fields* = } = Agri nobis sunt colendi.  
*Fields ought to be tilled by us* }

N.B. iii.—Any of the above constructions may be used in Indirect Statement, *i.e.* Acc. and Infin.: thus,

Navis mittenda est *becomes* Dixit navem mittendam esse.

A. 1. Hostages must be given. War will have to be waged.  
 The city is to be burnt. Ships had to be repaired.  
 These things ought not to have been neglected.

2. We must encourage the soldiers. The citizens will have to take up arms. Caesar had to draw-up the line-of-battle. You must hear my words.

3. We must hasten. You will have to start. The soldiers had to fight. We shall have to use force. He ought not to have hesitated.
  4. All men must die. We therefore must so pass our life that we may be able to die without fear.
  5. So great an opportunity must not be lost. We must undergo all dangers for the sake of saving the state.
  6. Our messenger had to set out in the middle of the night in order to reach the city of Capua before dawn.
  7. Since this is the case, all hope of retiring must be abandoned. We must either conquer or die.
  8. Having been asked what he thought about this matter, he replied that Carthage must be destroyed.
  9. We shall have to cross these rivers ; rafts must therefore be prepared as quickly as possible.
  10. You will have to take care lest you seem more friendly to Antonius than to the senate.
- B.*
1. Suspicion must be avoided. This slavery is not to be endured. The gates had to be broken-through. The camp will have to be fortified.
  2. The consul had to enrol three legions. You must adopt this plan. We shall have to attack the city. All men must die.
  3. We must not hesitate. The soldiers had to leap-down. The general will have to advance. You ought to have remained at home.
  4. If we wish to enjoy peace, we must prepare war. You see in what position things are.
  5. These lands must be cultivated with the utmost diligence, that they may bear a crop.
  6. We shall have to travel as quickly as possible, because a great part of the summer has already been spent.
  7. Unless you wish to become slaves you must not let slip this opportunity of freeing the state.
  8. When I perceived how great an opportunity was offered, I thought I must not hesitate.
  9. Since this was the case, the soldiers had to fight with the barbarians in the middle of the waves.
  10. This matter must be concluded without delay ; Pompeius himself will have to undertake the task.

## Exercise 79.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS (§ 30). I.

Impersonal Verbs are used only in 3rd Sing. and in Infinitive.

The following Impersonals are of 2nd Conjugation:—

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |   |                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>A. Pudet = <i>it shames</i> (me, you, &amp;c.)<br/>         Paenitet = <i>it repents</i> " "<br/>         Taedet = <i>it wearies</i> " "<br/>         Piget = <i>it vexes</i> " "<br/>         Miseret = <i>it moves</i> (my) <i>pity</i></p> | } | <p>Accus. of Person.<br/>         Genit.<br/>         or<br/>         Infin. } of Cause.</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Ex. Pudet me facinoris = *I am ashamed of my crime.*  
 Paenitet eos hoc fecisse = *They repent of having done it.*

B. Oportet = *it behoves* (ought), Acc. and Infinitive.

Oportet me ire = *It behoves me to go* = *I ought to go.*

Oportuit te ire = *You ought to have gone.*

C. Licet = *it is lawful*. Dat. of Person + Infinitive.

Licet nobis abire = *it is lawful for us to go* = *we may go* = *we are allowed to go.*

Licuit vobis abire = *it was lawful for you to go* = *you might have gone.*

The Impersonals may be used in any Tense or Mood.

Taedebit Gallos belli = *The Gauls will be weary of war.*

Ne te misereat horum = *Do not pity these men.*

Dixit se paenitere = *He said he repented.*

- A. 1. We shall repent. The boys were ashamed. They are vexed. Let him not be ashamed. I pity your brother. You will soon be-weary of peace.
2. We ought to send ambassadors. They ought to have made peace. The citizens are not allowed to speak. He said we might come.
3. Are you not weary of living in the country? You ought to have gone to Africa with Scipio.

4. The ambassadors begged that the Helvetii might be allowed to travel through our province.
5. The soldiers were ashamed of this slaughter, many repented of having taken-up arms.
6. He has deserved so well of the republic that I already repent of my former purpose.
7. Do not believe this man. Do you not see that all the citizens are already ashamed of this law ?
8. Since the forces of the enemy are not far distant, the soldiers will not be allowed to go-out of the camp.
9. Let us not be ashamed of our words. You know how great a danger is threatening the republic.
10. What you tell me is most serious ; you ought to have informed me of this matter ten days ago.

- B.*
1. I pity you. They will be ashamed. The consul had repented. We are weary of this delay. He repents of having said this.
  2. We might have started. You ought to pardon him. The boys were allowed to play. Your sister is weary of staying at home.
  3. Ought not good citizens to obey the laws ? Shall we, then, hesitate to inflict punishment on these men ?
  4. I do not know when I shall return ; I already repent of having undertaken the business.
  5. Having ascertained these facts, I begged that I might be allowed to speak for him.
  6. Your brother ought to have remained in Italy. He will repent of having taken up arms.
  7. Are you not ashamed to speak such words about such a man in so sacred a place ?
  8. Who does not pity those who are compelled to pass (their) life in those regions ?
  9. Surely this nation ought to be contented. Where in the world will you find more fertile lands ?
  10. Since they perceived that he repented of his folly, they were unwilling to deprive him of liberty.

## Exercise 80.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS. II.

**Interest and Refert** = *it is of importance, it concerns.*

The Person (or Thing) concerned is denoted thus :

1st Pers. and 2nd Pers. : Fem. Abl. of *meus, tuus, noster, vester.*

3rd Person : Genitive of Noun or Pronoun.

*It is important for me (you, etc.)* = *mea (tua, etc.), interest.*

*It concerns him (Caesar)* = *ejus (Caesaris) interest.*

The Thing which is important is denoted by an Infin. or by Acc. and Infin., or by *ut* + Subj.

*It is highly important that you should be present.*

*Multum interest te adesse (or ut adsis).*

*Impersonal Use of Passive.*

**Intransitive Verbs** are used Impersonally in **Passive.**

*Pugnatum est* = *it was fought* = *there was fighting.*

The Agent may be denoted by **ab** + Abl.

*Pugnatur a nobis* = *it is fought by us* = *we fight.*

**Intransitive Verbs governing a Dative** retain the Dative when used thus :

*You are spared* = *it is spared to you* = *tibi parcutur.*

So in the Infinitive and Gerund.

*I could not be persuaded* = *persuaderi mihi non potuit.*

*You are not to be envied* = *tibi non invidendum est.*

4. 1. We shall be favoured. They are envied. The captives are spared. Let him be pardoned. These men are not to be believed.
2. Our men fought bravely (Pass.). The enemy resisted vigorously (Pass.) for a long while.
3. It is important for the Roman people that Carthage should be destroyed as quickly as possible.

4. When he had flung himself at (*ad*) Caesar's feet, he begged with many tears that (his) brother might be pardoned.
  5. As soon as the consul entered the senate a shout-arose [it was shouted] from all who were present.
  6. He said that it was important for us to collect as many forces as possible.
  7. You may try to persuade the judges, but, believe me you will not be believed.
  8. Surely it is highly important for the state that the laws should be obeyed by all.
  9. These men must be resisted. They will never be persuaded to desist from their wicked design.
  10. Since this is the case, we shall have to create a dictator. Which of these two will you choose ?
  11. Do not be-weary of this delay. Do you not see that it is highly important to avoid all suspicion ?
- B.
1. You will be favoured. The rich were being envied. Let all be spared. Catilina must be resisted. It concerns all good citizens.
  2. Having heard this, he advised that the chiefs of this conspiracy should not be spared.
  3. Do not delay. It is highly important for the senate that this matter should be concluded.
  4. The citizens will never be persuaded to go to Veii for the sake of founding a new city.
  5. The Gauls resisted us with such valour that the battle lasted [it was fought] till (*ad*) evening.
  6. Having sent ambassadors to Caesar, they begged that the women and children might be spared.
  7. I pray you, judges, that I may be allowed to speak. This witness is not to be believed.
  8. It makes all the difference (*magni interest*) whether you are going to travel by sea or by land.
  9. Some will be pardoned, others will be beheaded. Neither these nor those are to be envied.
  10. If you ask me why I have behaved in this manner, I reply that the laws must be obeyed.





## PART IV.

# THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

N.B.—The various kinds of Dependent Clauses are here dealt with in the same order as in Part III., but examples of some of the more difficult constructions are introduced.

*Exercise 81.*

## PARTICIPLES.

See Notes on Participles, § 17-20. Abl. Absol. § 21-24.

(Words in italics to be translated by Participial Phrases.)

1. *Hearing a shout* they halted, *wondering* what was the cause of this thing : then, *drawing their swords*, they hastened in that direction (42).
2. *Since a great storm had arisen*, the ships *which had been sent from Italy*, were driven-back (*rejecio*) to the harbour whence they sailed.
3. *On ascertaining this* he started at once, *leaving his baggage* at Brundisium : but *after advancing* a few miles, he returned.
4. *Fearing* lest they should escape, we pursued them *as they fled* and slew many of them *while they were crossing the river*.
5. I do not believe that *if this permission is given*, they will abstain from injury.
6. *After being thrown into* prison the chiefs of the conspiracy were beheaded. This was done *in the consulship of Cicero*.
7. He set out, *against my wish*, and advancing a few miles from the city met Clodius returning from the country.
8. *On receiving your letter* I went-on-board, *leaving my wife and children* at home, and, *as the wind was favourable*, we set sail at once.
9. *After receiving many wounds* he was slain, fighting bravely in the first ranks.
10. These things were done *under your leadership, in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius*.
11. *After being condemned to death* he fled to Athens, *fearing* lest he should be taken ; then, *calling his friends together*, he spoke thus.
12. *Though about forty ships were lost*, he thought the rest could be repaired ; and, *after pitching his camp*, began the work.
13. *On learning these facts*, he determined to burn the camp, *which had been deserted by the Gauls*.
14. *Drawing their swords and raising a shout*, they charged into the middle of the enemies' line.
15. *Since all my baggage was lost*, I remained a few days at Rome, *by the advice of your brother*.

## Exercise 82.

PARTICIPLES. See § 17-24.

English Co ordinate Sentence expressed by Participial  
Phrase, or Adv. Clause.

- i. *He took the city and returned* =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{urbe capta, rediit.} \\ \text{cum urbem cepisset, rediit.} \end{array} \right.$
  - ii. *He spoke thus and sat down* = *haec locutus, consedit.*
  - iii. *He took the city and burnt it* = *urbem captam incendit.*
  - iv. *The city was taken and burnt* = *urbs capta incensa est.*
1. He fortified his camp *and* left two legions there : then advanced a little-way (*paulum*) from the shore *and* drew up his line.
  2. The enemy also led out their forces *and* drew them up : but, being unable to stand our charge, they fled.
  3. We followed them a few miles *and* slew a great number : we then burnt their village *and* returned to the camp.
  4. Knowing that the place was not far off, we set out thither : but perceiving that he was weary, we halted.
  5. The chiefs of the conspiracy had been arrested *and* thrown into prison : I, however, knowing how difficult the matter was, hesitated.
  6. Hearing that there would be a scarcity of corn, he moved his camp *and* advanced a few miles.
  7. So saying, he raised his spear *and* hurled it with all his might at the side of the horse.
  8. We advised them to go *and* they started ; but seeing that the river was deep, they were unwilling to cross.
  9. On learning what had been done he called together the centurions *and* praised them.
  10. He wrote that he had started already *and* would be at home in a few days.
  11. This being the case, he chose a suitable place *and* fortified it with a rampart and ditch.
  12. Advancing a few miles from the city, he met Clodius returning from the country.
  13. Seeing how great the danger was, he hastily enrolled two legions *and* sent them thither.
  14. He stayed a few days in that district, burnt the towns, cut down the corn *and* retreated.
  15. After this he was accused of bribery : the witnesses, however, were not believed (30), *and* he was acquitted.

*Exercise 83.*

## ANY AND SOME. § 50, 51.

1. I deny that this man has done anything against the laws of our state. Will anyone dare to accuse him ?
2. We will accomplish this task without any assistance ; nor do we fear the threats of any man.
3. If any crime has been committed, if any murder has been done, it is (the duty) of the judges (44) to decide the punishment.
4. Of all things from which something is gained (*acquirō*) scarcely anything is more useful than agriculture (*agricultura*).
5. The soldiers were commanded (*impero*, §. 30) to go out before sunset, lest the citizens should receive any injury.
6. Some were unwilling to accept any terms : others were willing to do anything for the sake of peace.
7. Does anyone believe that he is really aiming at the throne ? I must, however, say something on this point (*res*).
8. It is (in the power) of any man to do something for the state. Any danger, any death is better than slavery.
9. Who was ever more hostile to anyone than Caesar to Deiotarus ? If anyone can answer let him speak.
10. If any war had arisen at that time, there would scarcely have been any hope of saving the state.
11. Such a task cannot be completed without some labour, but we know you are ready to undergo any danger.
12. We could scarcely believe that anyone had survived that disaster. Some few, however, were rescued *and* (20, iii.) brought back.
13. Some reached the further bank without any difficulty : others sank in the middle of the river *and* (20, iii.) perished.
14. If there is any hope of safety, believe me, we are willing to adopt any plan.
15. Somebody has advised that the senate should present these men with some reward on account of their services.
16. He has refused to give us anything ; he is, however, richer by far than any of those who have given something.

## Exercise 84.

## NEGATIVES. § 54, 55.

1. He is a man of the greatest (*summus*) ability, and I have never seen anyone more fitted for carrying on this business.
2. Remain, therefore, where you are, and do not forget that it is the duty of a soldier to obey his general.
3. Being banished from the state, he took-refuge (*refugio*) in Asia and never was seen again in Rome during my consulship (23).
4. He said he had injured no man, and I believe he has done nothing against the laws of this state.
5. He intreated them with tears not to do anything rashly, and not to abandon hope altogether.
6. I see that you are anxious not only about your own peril and (that) of the state, but about mine also.
7. He says he does not fear death and that he is not ashamed of having behaved himself so.
8. We know what has taken-place, and we are not ashamed to say that we received the news with great joy.
9. He saw how serious the danger was, and did not hesitate to adopt this plan *and* start at once.
10. We must not forget that it is the duty of the consuls to see that the State receives no harm (13).
11. He said that he had travelled through many lands and had never seen anything more disgraceful.
12. Do not be ashamed. Not only am I not angry with you, but I do not even blame (you).
13. The messenger has not started, and we have not been informed when he is likely to reach the city.
14. This being the case, they said that he had not been lawfully made consul on that day.
15. On being asked why he had shown himself so ungrateful, he said that he had never seen the man before.
16. He said that nothing better had been given to men by the immortal gods.

## Exercise 85.

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. When they came to the river which divides the Bituriges from the Aedui, they stayed there for a few days ; but not daring (18) to cross the river, returned home, and reported to our legates that they had returned because they-feared [fearing] the treachery of the Bituriges.
2. But those who were being besieged in the town of Alesia, since (20) the day had now passed on which they had expected the help of their people, and since (20) all the corn was consumed, and they were ignorant (*inscius*) what was going on among the Aedui, called a council and were consulting (*consulto*, 1) what was to be done.
3. Thinking that the war could be concluded quickly, he collected his forces and hastened into the country of the Morini, who were still in arms and had never sent hostages.
4. I will do anything to be of assistance (11) to him. He is a man of the greatest ability, and no one is worthier of this honour. Moreover Cato says that he has never seen anyone more fitted for carrying on this most difficult business.
5. As soon as they saw him, the townsmen raised a shout (20), seized their arms, and began to shut the gates and man (*compleo*) the wall. The centurions, however, perceiving that some (13) new plan was being adopted by the Gauls, drew their swords, secured (*occupo*) the gates, and brought-off (*recipio*) all their men unhurt.
6. While this was going on, Labienus, leaving behind, to be a protection (13) to the baggage, the legion which had recently come from Italy, set out for Lutetia, a town (107, *h*) which is on an island of the river Sequana, and his arrival (111) being ascertained by the enemy, great forces assembled from the neighbouring states.
7. On (*ab*) the right wing, where the seventh legion had taken-up-its-position (*consisto*), the enemy were driven-back and put to flight : on the left, the position (107, *h*) which the twelfth legion held, when the first ranks of the enemy had fallen transfixed with darts, the rest nevertheless resisted most-vigorously, and no one showed a sign of flying [gave a suspicion of flight.]

*Exercise 86.*

SUBOBLIQUE. See § 123.

The **Verb** of a Suboblique Clause is in the **Subjunctive**.

1. They replied that the lands which the Germans had seized were much more fertile than those which were across the Rhine.
2. He said that he had to (27) move his camp because the barbarians were beginning to be troublesome.
3. On hearing this we entreated them not to throw away that liberty which they had received of their ancestors.
4. He said that nothing could be more grievous than slavery to men who had lived so long in a free state.
5. This being the case, he sent ambassadors and demanded that the hostages which he had given should be returned at once.
6. He then pointed-out that these were the same men whom the Helvetii had often overcome in (42) battle.
7. He promises that your persons (*corpus*) shall be safe, if you are willing to go out from Saguntum unarmed, with one garment apiece.
8. Surely you will not deny that the man who is a foe to the state can in no way be considered a citizen.
9. When we threatened him with (48) death, he said he had done nothing which was worthy of (45) such a penalty.
10. I could never be persuaded (30) that souls lived while they were in the body (and) died when they had gone-forth from it.
11. Hearing this, he turned (3) to the judge and (20) said he was not ashamed of what he had done.
12. They said they were unwilling to do anything against those customs which they had learnt in their boyhood (42).
13. Perceiving how great the danger was, he commanded the soldiers to throw away the burdens which they were carrying.
14. Dionysius seems to have pointed-out that nothing can be happy for the man whom some terror is always threatening.
15. Those who were before the gates announced that dust was seen in that direction in which the legion had travelled.

## Exercise 87.

## SE AND SUUS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. § 131.

In any Sentence or Clause **se** and **suus** may refer to the Subject of that Sentence or Clause.

In Substantival, Final, and Suboblique Clauses, etc., **se** and **suus** may *also* refer to the Subject of the Principal Sentence.

1. He persuaded the Helvetii to go-forth from *their* territories.
2. They implored Caesar not to deliver *them* into slavery.
3. We learnt that *his* camp was not far distant from the town.
4. Ariovistus said that the Gauls had made war on *him*.
5. They begged that they might be allowed to obey *him*.
6. You know that *his* influence is very great among *them*.
7. Ariovistus asked why Caesar had come into *his* (A.'s) lands.
8. They begged him to send one of *his* slaves to *them*.
9. He had won for *himself* so much influence that all obeyed *him*.
10. They said they blamed us because we hindered *them*.
11. He replied that since they would not hear *him*, *he* would go.
12. They spoke so vehemently that we all believed *them*.
13. Caesar sent forward horsemen to inform us of *his* approach.
14. They asked that they might (*licet*) do this with *his* consent.
15. He did this fearing lest the enemy might surprise *him*.
16. These men are so rich that all the citizens envy *them*.
17. He commanded *them* to send *their* children to *him*.
18. The Aedui and *their* allies were approaching with all *their* forces.
19. They entreated Caesar to come to *their* help because they were grievously oppressed by the Suebi.
20. He begged that *he* might be allowed to remain in Gaul because he was afraid-of the sea.
21. When he ordered them to await *his* coming in the place where they were, they obeyed.
22. He (A.) confessed that *he* owed very-much to Caesar in-return-for *his* (C.'s) kindness to *him* (A.), because by *his* (C.'s) exertions he (A.) had been freed from the tribute (*stipendium*) which he had been accustomed to pay (*pendo*, 3) to *his* (A.'s) neighbours.
23. He charges the Senones, who are neighbours to the Belgae, to learn what is going on among *them* (B.) and inform *him* about these matters



*Exercise 88.*

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. When he understood that he had to wage war in the same place where a few years before the legate had been killed, and whence the proconsul had fled with (20) the loss of his baggage, he perceived that he must exert (*adhibeo*) no (*non mediocris*) ordinary diligence.
2. I have spent, said he, so-many years in waging war that I wish to enjoy peace in my old age (42). Since, however, such a danger is threatening the state, I am ready to undertake any labour.
3. Solon, a man of the greatest wisdom, when he was asked why he had appointed no punishment for (*in*) him who had killed his parent, replied that he had thought that nobody would do it.
4. The Germans, hearing a shout behind their backs, and seeing that their men were being slain, threw away their arms, abandoned their standards, and (20) burst out of the camp.
5. Seeing that the village was burning (3), he determined to land, and having done this, he hastened as quickly as possible into the middle of the island, leaving a few soldiers as a protection (11) for the ships.
6. You and I, my friend, are able to bear this disaster with calmness. Yet we must not blame those who think that the danger is increasing (3). Not even you can persuade the citizens to remain silent at such a time.
7. He intends to travel through the middle of Africa in order to learn whence this river rises ; and no one can say when we are likely-to-see him again. However, we shall never forget his kindness.
8. The fighting (30) went on briskly (*acriter*) and for a long while, since the enemy, relying on their previous victories, considered that the safety of the whole district depended on their own valour ; while (*autem*) our men were-anxious (*cupio*) that it should be seen (*perspicio*) what they could do without their general, without the rest of the legions, and under the leadership of a young-man (23).

## Exercise 89.

## ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES. § 105-107.

1. You will not repent of having sent Pompeius to conclude this business. You all of you know how skilled he is in waging war, and what dangers he has already undergone.
2. What I did, I did for your sake, and if I have injured anyone I beg to be pardoned (30). What has become of (45) your friend, I do not know.
3. The matter you spoke of seems to me very serious. Either you must return to Rome yourself, or send some<sup>7</sup> one worthy of confidence (*fiducia*).
4. He informed the senate that the legions he had with him were sufficient for defending the town of Capua.
5. This being the case, they demanded that the hostages they had sent should be given back to them without any delay.
6. The man (107, *b*) who enjoys prosperity without pride, is also (*idem*) most fitted for bearing adversity with calmness.
7. He denied that anyone had done what he himself had done ; but we all of us know that he is a man of great audacity.
8. The books you admire so-much are in my opinion not to be compared with those that you and I read in our boyhood (42).
9. I-am-weary of this war : the soldiers have taken away from me the best horse I had, and have drunk the wine I valued so-highly.
10. On hearing this he tried to thank his friends, but he was so overcome (*oppressus*) with grief that he could scarcely speak for (40) tears.
11. You have a general mindful of you, forgetful of himself, an (107, *h*) opportunity which is not always given.
12. When they saw the men whom they supposed to be dead, they were stricken with terror and, throwing away what they had in their hands, fled.
13. We must pardon those who have repented. We are unwilling to deprive any citizen of liberty.
14. You and I, who know how obscure the business is, will ask Cicero (10) his opinion about this matter.
15. Hearing that his father was dead, he demanded that the books he had left might be given up to him.

*Exercise 90.*

## ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES. § 108-11.

1. The man you have chosen consul is unworthy of such an honour, and he will never become such a man as his father was.
2. On that day there was in the forum a multitude such [= so great] as I never had seen before.
3. Our leader is such a man as a leader ought (*debeo*) to be, for there is in him as much (of) prudence as (of) valour (13).
4. You have such an opportunity of recovering your liberty as was never offered you before. Do not hesitate.
5. He was the first man who travelled through the middle of Africa and discovered whence the Nile arises.
6. Meanwhile the letters were brought, *and* when he had read *them* (111) he said that we must set out without delay.
7. Hearing this we immediately started for Athens, *and* when we arrived there (111) we heard that he had died a few days before.
8. (It is) not death (that) we fear, but slavery; (it is) for the sake of liberty (that) we have taken up arms.
9. If he had been in reality such as he was in appearance, he would have been an example (11) to all good citizens.
10. Suddenly smoke was seen on the left, *and* when they saw *it*, our men, raising a shout, hastened in that direction.
11. I pledge-myself (*spondeo*) that C. Caesar will always be such a citizen as he is to-day.
12. What he is aiming at I cannot say, but I will try to bear with calmness what he says.
13. For the Roman people cannot hope that there are in the senate others who can judge rightly of this matter (123).
14. Do not let slip such an opportunity as this (110); believe me, it is not my own safety that I am seeking, but that of all of you.
15. He therefore called together the centurions; and they, having previously ascertained what the soldiers wished, explained the whole matter.

## Exercise 91.

## QUI + SUBJUNCTIVE. § 112-116.

1. Messengers came to report that a great storm had arisen on the previous night, and that many of the ships had been shattered by the waves.
2. We must send forward the cavalry as soon as possible, to ascertain in which direction the enemy are travelling.
3. Who is there of you who is ignorant that it is the duty of the consuls to take care lest the state receive any harm (13) ?
4. I can scarcely believe that there is anyone who, after hearing these witnesses, is (123) willing to pardon these men.
5. Were there not many found who were willing to sacrifice (*profundere*) not only their money but also their life for their country.
6. Is there anyone who does not see that a conspiracy has been made against the state and against the life of each of us ?
7. There are some who would rather live in the city than in the country. In my opinion that method of life is not to be compared with this.
8. What evil, what wickedness can be imagined (*excogito*, 1) which that man has not done ? What punishment is there of which he is not worthy ?
9. There is no nation, believe me, which we have-to-fear : no king who can make war upon the Roman people.
10. Having determined to cross into Britain, he sent (men) to ascertain what was the nature of the island.
11. He was the last to leave the ship. He is not the sort-of-man (*is*) to prefer his own life to the safety of his (men).
12. All who were present on that day declared (*confirmo*, 1) that the man was worthy to be banished from the state.
13. Rightly, therefore, did our ancestors consider that he who had deceived an ally ought not to be reckoned among (*in*) the number of good men.
14. Nobody who is an enemy to the state can be a good citizen. Who is there who dares to deny this ?
15. Perceiving how [in what place] things were, and fearing lest some tumult might arise, he adopted the following (*hoc*) plan

*Exercise 92.*

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. It is (110) not for the sake of booty, but in order to defend our country, that we have taken up arms. Who is there who does not see (114) that these barbarians intend to drive us from our territories?
2. He set out for the country a few days ago and will not (55) return before the seventh day. Before starting, however, he promised that he would inform me how things were going on.
3. He said that the forces he had with him were not sufficient for (39) besieging the city, and demanded that we should go to his assistance (11) as soon as possible.
4. I was the first who spoke on his behalf, and no one will venture to say that it was for the sake of gain that I did this.
5. Perceiving that the wind had changed, and that the ships were scarcely moving (3) he landed his men, drew-up (*subduco*) his ships and surrounded them (20, 22) with a ditch and rampart.
6. He said he was not ashamed of the words he had spoken, and since scarcely anyone believed the witnesses, he was acquitted by the vote of all the judges.
7. Although he understood for (*de*) what reason this was said, yet lest he might be compelled to spend the summer in that district, he ordered their chief to come to him with two hundred hostages.
8. Do not be angry with me. I have not received the letter you say you wrote from Brundisium ten days ago. If I had known that you were coming, I would have prepared everything.
9. Dolabella is said to have been so unmindful of humanity, (*humanitas*) that he exercised his cruelty not only on (*in* + Abl.) the living but also on the dead.
10. By buying and selling corn he has acquired such wealth as scarcely anyone of the citizens (has acquired). I, however, do not envy him, and I do not (55) believe he enjoys his wealth.
11. Our men were scattered (*dispersus*), had laid aside their arms and were busied in reaping; the enemy suddenly attacked (*adorior*) them, slew a few, and threw the rest into confusion. [*This sentence may be done with only one finite verb (20, 22).*]

*Exercise 93.*

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## I. Final (§ 77-80).

1. The captives besought him with (48) tears to spare them, lest the innocent should pay the penalty for the guilty.
2. That you may the more easily understand what-sort-of man (*qualis*) he is, I will briefly point out how he behaved in his youth.
3. Fearing lest he might be hindered from returning by the time of year, he started the next day at the third hour.
4. Leaving two legions to be a protection (11) to the ships, he advanced a few miles in the direction whither the enemy had retreated.
5. A few days after he ascertained that some Germans had crossed the river to plunder, and had burnt the villages.
6. He ordered the ships to be made wider than (those) which we use, that they might be more fit for (*ad*) carrying a multitude of men.
7. The gates were shut, that no one might go out of the town, and that nothing might be brought in (*infero*).
8. Knowing that the booty would be a hindrance to them, they concealed it in the woods and left it behind, that they might travel more quickly.
9. In-order-to-avoid meeting me he came here by a longer route; but unless I am mistaken he has already arrived at home.
10. In those times men used to be summoned from the plough to be made consuls. All things change, and we, too, have changed.
11. When Caesar sent messengers to them to demand (*qui*) that they should give up those who had made war on him, they replied as-follows.
12. The queen, clad in white garments that she might the better deceive the guards, escaped from the city in the middle of the night.
13. That no one may suppose that I have undertaken this business without just cause, I will explain what has recently been going on.
14. In order that they themselves might seem the more innocent, they threw the blame of the whole matter on the multitude.
15. That nothing might be done without the consent of the senate, we begged that the consuls might be informed without delay.

*Exercise 94.*

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## II. Consecutive (§ 81–84 and 114).

1. The consul has behaved himself in these matters with such prudence as to be called the father of his country.
2. Surely you are not foolish enough to neglect such an opportunity as this is (110).
3. There were found two Roman knights to free you from that anxiety, and to promise that they would kill me in my bed.
4. We have a consul of-such-a-sort (*is*) that the republic can meet-with (*accipere*) no disaster under his leadership (23).
5. I am one (*is*, 114) who have always despised such threats, and there is no one who can accuse me of cowardice.
6. Such was his valour that he feared no danger, and that no task could be too difficult for him to undertake.
7. Our men showed such courage that the barbarians could not sustain even (54) one charge, and took-to-flight immediately.
8. On that day he spoke for two hours with such eloquence that no one could restrain his tears.
9. I must say a few words, that no one may suppose that I have adopted this plan without any cause.
10. Unless I am mistaken, there were some who believed that Crassus was not ignorant of Catiline's plan.
11. Do you not pity those slaves? The burdens you have laid upon them are too heavy for them to bear.
12. Surely you are not mad enough to attempt this; the river is much too deep to be crossed on foot (46).
13. Dionysius judged (*arbitror*) that no man who was either worthy of liberty or who wished to be free could be a friend to him (131).
14. I beg of you so to listen to my words as to consider that I speak not only for myself, but also for the Roman people.
15. Living (25) in the country is so pleasant to me that I am unwilling to return to Rome. I shall have to go, however, in a few days.
16. What house is so stable (*stabilis*), what state so firm, that (114) it cannot be overthrown by hatred?

*Exercise 95.*

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## Quin and Quominus (§ 117-119).

1. When we saw him overcome (*afficio*) with such sorrow, we could not help asking him why he had not informed us.
2. He will be made consul with the consent of all the citizens, and there is no doubt that he has deserved well of (*de*) the state.
3. They could not be prevented from starting, though we were all of us trying to persuade them to remain.
4. The city was very nearly taken (118). Had you not come to our help we should have been compelled to beg for peace.
5. Such was the anger of the soldiers on hearing this that they could scarcely be restrained from hurling their spears at him.
6. They reported that a great storm had arisen the previous night and that the ships had nearly sunk.
7. We must not neglect such an opportunity. What prevents us from beginning the work at once?
8. They said they had been prevented from coming to our help because the river had been swollen (*augeo*) by the rains.
9. I cannot help believing that this task is too difficult for us to accomplish alone.
10. He said he did not doubt that they would show the same valour which they had shown in former battles.
11. We must pardon these men (27-29). I cannot help believing that they already repent of their deeds.
12. I never enter your house without finding him either writing or reading with your brother.
13. It is impossible but that the judges should perceive that these witnesses are not to be believed.
14. On that day he received such serious wounds that he very nearly died.
15. It is (110) for your sake that I have undertaken the matter, and nothing shall prevent me from speaking.



## Exercise 96.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## III. Causal (§ 85-88).

1. When Caesar had made an end of speaking, the tenth legion thanked him through their tribunes for having (87, b) confidence in them.
2. They themselves had not more than 800 horsemen, because those who had crossed the river to get-corn (*frumentor*, 1) had not yet returned.
3. He complained *of* their making (87, b) war on him after voluntarily (*ultra*) sending hostages and begging peace of him.
4. Though all good citizens well know what-sort-of-man he is, there were some who dared to charge him with taking-part in that conspiracy.
5. Being asked why he had not been present, he said he was unable to start from Brundisium because the wind was not suitable.
6. Will anyone venture to say that Cato was-a-candidate-for (*peto*) the consulship because he was greedy of money?
7. If you are angry with me because I defend the man you accuse, why am I not angry with you because you accuse the man I defend.
8. I gladly undertake to speak for your brother, not because he has always been very dear to me, but because I know him to be innocent.
9. He vehemently blamed the centurions for forgetting that it is the general's part (44) to determine in which direction the army should march.
10. A few years after he was accused and condemned to death (47) *for* aiming at the throne.
11. He replies that they may (*licet*) set out in whatever direction they wish without fear.
12. He pointed out that it was easy for them to carry-out (*perficio*) this attempt because he himself was going to seize (*occupo*) the throne in his own state.
13. Since this village was divided into two parts by the river, he assigned one part to the Gauls, the other to the cohorts.
14. They did this the (*eo*) more-easily because our ships were prevented by the storm from sailing.
15. I was unwilling to go from home, because I had no doubt that you would return in a few days.

*Exercise 97.*

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. Being informed that Caesar's camp was not far distant, they sent messengers to say that they intended to travel through our province, because they had no other route (*iter*).
2. When Socrates had argued for a long while about the immortality (*immortalitas*) of the soul and (when) the hour of death [the time of dying] was now approaching, being asked by Crito how he wished to be buried, he replied thus: 'I have spent,' said he, 'much trouble (*opera*, -*ae*) in vain, for I have not convinced my (friend) Crito that I shall fly-away hence and leave behind nothing of myself.'
3. Do not be frightened; our general is not the man to desert his friends, and (55) I have no doubt that he will come to our help as quickly as possible.
4. When the enemy were now a few miles distant from the town our leader made a sortie (20), slew a number of them, captured a few, and brought his men back safe.
5. A few days after they arrested the (man) himself and (20) threw him into chains; they were unwilling, however, to put him to death, lest any disturbance should arise.
6. On hearing this, he perceived that the enemy's forces were too great for him to overcome in battle; he determined, therefore, to use stratagem, and persuaded the other consul to adopt the same plan.
7. There is no doubt that he is a man of the greatest audacity, and I do not (55) believe that anyone can hinder him from undertaking this business.
8. They sent ambassadors to Cacsar to beg that he would not reckon (*duco*) them in the number of his enemies, and that he would not imagine (*judico*) that all the Germans who were on-this-side-of (*citra* + Acc.) the Rhine were aiming at the same thing.
9. Is anyone so foolish as to believe that men who are not ashamed to say such things are worthy of being made senators.

## Exercise 98.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## IV. Temporal (§ 89-91).

1. As long as he remains where he is, the city will be safe (91, *a*).
2. I will let you know [inform you], as soon as I reach Athens.
3. When you have destroyed Athens, you will conclude the war.
4. While they were fortifying the camp, a shout was heard.
5. As long as he lived, there was some hope of safety.
6. After they had been banished, we at length enjoyed peace.
7. We must wait here till the messengers return (91, *c*, *B*).
8. Before he came to Rome, nobody ever heard of him (91, *d*).
9. You will have to leave the city before the gates are shut.
10. He was taken before we could come to his help.
11. Milo was in the senate that day till (*quoad*) it was dismissed.
12. He bade them remain silent till the signal was given.
13. A vast multitude was waiting for (40) the doors to be opened.
14. Being thrown (*dejicio*) from his horse, he resisted as long as he could.
15. Before I received your letter, I knew nothing of the matter.
16. We charged before the enemy could draw up their line.
17. As long as there is anyone to defend you, you shall live.
18. Nor did they cease flying before they reached the camp.
19. He was unwilling to depart till (*antequam*) he had ascertained the cause.
20. When he had landed the soldiers, he landed himself.
21. I advise you to say nothing till (*antequam*) your brother has returned.
22. Hardly had he spoken these words, when the door opened (Obs.).
23. He said he would not return before he had taken the city.
24. What I have undertaken, I will endure as long as I can.
25. Whenever they took a town, they used to slay the inhabitants (Obs.).
26. While he was travelling in this manner, he met Clodius.
27. They had scarcely advanced a mile, when fires were seen.
28. He said he would do nothing till (before) he had seen you.

*Exercise 99.*

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## IV. Temporal (§ 89-91).

1. Before starting, he promised that he would let us know as soon as he reached\* the camp : although, therefore, this delay is most vexatious, we shall have to remain here till his messenger comes.
2. Seeing this, our men were so eager for fighting that they would not wait for the signal to be given, and charged before the line could be drawn up.
3. As long as this state stands, there will never be wanting men to (114) shed (*profundo*) their blood for their country and the temples of their gods.
4. He sent messengers to bid them remain in the place where they then were, till he himself arrived with the rest of the cavalry.
5. While we were travelling in Italy, we met your friend, and he advised us not to drink the water of the river, because it was bad.
6. When this war is finished, when we have returned to our homes, we will gladly render thanks to the gods.
7. As long as this man is allowed to violate the laws, and to conspire against the state, there will be no safety for any man.
8. As long as he was poor, he seemed a man of moderate ability : it was (110) after he had become rich that we discovered what sort of man he was.
9. Hardly had the rear guard passed (*procedo*) outside the fortifications, when the Gauls, encouraging each other not to let-slip the booty they hoped for, crossed the river.
10. About ten days after he had reached the winter-quarters, he was informed that the town had been taken before Labienus was able to assemble his forces.
11. After our cavalry had come into sight, the enemy threw away their arms, turned their backs and sought safety by flight (20).
12. As often as each cohort ran forward, a great number of the enemy fell on that side.
13. Seeing the position of affairs [in what place things were] he considered it would be a mark (44) of extreme (*summus*) folly to wait till the forces of the enemy increased (3).

\* In a Suboblique Temporal Clause the Tense may be ascertained by considering what it would be in Direct Speech (observing the caution given in § 91, a) : then apply the Table in § 129.

*Exercise 100.*

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## Conditional (§ 92-96).

1. If he wishes to advise you rightly he will persuade you to go away, and not to answer me a [any] word.
2. If the whole of Sicily were now speaking with one voice, it would say this.
3. There is nothing that I can say, nor if there were, would I say it.
4. If we wish to enjoy peace, let us undertake this war.
5. If I had tried to do this before, I should not be able to do it now.
6. If you were to bid him to go through fire, he would do it.
7. What would you reply if I asked you your opinion (10)?
8. You will free me from great fear, provided there is a wall between us.
9. Whether we remain here or start at once, the thing is easy.
10. If the consul were to die, the senate would appoint a dictator.
11. I was going to start at once, had I not received your letter.
12. Had I not known that this was false, I would not have spoken.
13. If C. Caesar himself were living, he would defend his acts.
14. If such an opportunity were offered, I should not neglect (it).
15. The whole army might have been destroyed, if we had pursued.
16. The city will be taken in a few days, unless we send help.
17. If the consul himself called you, would you not obey him?
18. We should all of us have perished, if you had not spoken for us.
19. They will never reach the harbour unless the wind changes.
20. If anyone says this, he errs (*erro*, 1) greatly (*vehementer*).
21. The state would be rescued from great danger, if he went away.
22. If my authority had prevailed, we should be free to-day.
23. If I am abandoned (*desero*, 3) I will try to bear it calmly.
24. He would be a richer man, if he had listened to me.
25. Acquit this man, if you think I am to be believed (30).
26. Unless I am mistaken, he is not the man to do this (114).
27. We might have avoided suspicion, if you had gone away.

## Exercise 101.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## Conditional (§ 92-96).

1. He pointed out how great an opportunity would be given of making-booty (*praedor*, 1) if they drove [had driven] the Romans from the camp.
2. We should not see their crimes so clearly (*perspicue*) did not avarice render them blind.
3. He sends a messenger to say that unless help is sent to him without delay he cannot hold-out (*sustineo*) any longer.
4. He promised that he would spare them if they gave-up [had given]\* the city before the ram had touched the walls.
5. They say they will come to him in the camp if Caesar permits (it).
6. He said that he would come to their help, if they were pressed by the Suebi.
7. Whether you decide-on (*statuo*) this or prefer to follow the opinion of Silanus, you will easily defend me from the charge (*vituperatio*) of cruelty.
8. I am afraid lest I should be troublesome to you, were I to speak longer about a matter so clear as this is (110).
9. He led out his forces that if Ariovistus wished to engage (*contendo*, 3) in battle the opportunity might not be wanting to him.
10. The night was so dark that we should never have reached (83, c) home, unless your slaves had come to our help.
11. We inquired what they intended to do, if Caesar forbade them to travel through the province.
12. He declared he would reckon them in the number of his enemies if they received (*recipio*) either Ariovistus or his (A.'s) allies into their territory.
13. He says the thing is easy whether they go or stay, if only (*modo*) they all think (*sentio*) alike [the same thing].
14. Not only will the cause of the nobility not be injured if you resist those men, but it will even be advanced (*orno*, 1).
15. There can be no doubt that if an opportunity had been afforded, he would have explained the whole matter.

\* The Tense in a Suboblique Conditional Clause is best ascertained by considering what would be the Tense in Direct Speech and then applying the Table in § 129.

*Exercise 102.*

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## Concessive (§ 97-99).

1. Although he well understood for what reason this was said, yet in order that he might not be compelled to spend the summer in that district, he ordered their chief to come to him with two hundred hostages.
2. However difficult, however dangerous this task may be, we, to whom your safety and that of the state has been entrusted, must not hesitate any longer.
3. In-spite-of-the-fact-that the snow was three feet deep on the top of the mountains, he contrived to cross the Alps in four days, and brought his army safely into Italy with the loss of about fifty men.
4. Great as was his experience in military affairs, the nature of the ground was such that he was unable to prevent the column from being surrounded.
5. Though (*licet*) terrors and dangers threaten me on every side, I will not abandon the hope of saving my own life and that of my friend.
6. Whatever I do, there are some who blame me ; yet whatever has been done has been done by the advice of the consul himself.
7. On hearing this, though he might easily have escaped from Italy, he returned home of his own accord and demanded a trial ; but, in spite of his great influence among his fellow-citizens, he was condemned and banished for having aimed at the throne.
8. Owing to the height of the wall, they were unable to storm the town, though its defenders were very few (99, b).
9. However eloquent he may be, he will never persuade the judges to acquit these men after hearing those witnesses.
10. They replied that the custom had been handed down by their ancestors of resisting (*Inf.*) whoever made war on them.
11. Though we are unwilling to believe that such a man has done anything against the laws of the state, yet we cannot help inquiring about this matter. Where there is smoke there is generally some fire.

## Exercise 103.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## Comparative (§ 100-104).

1. The more difficult your task is, the greater will be your praise if you accomplish what you have undertaken.
2. Although the danger is [has been] now averted (*depello*), yet you must defend your homes, just-as you did the night before (*superior*).
3. All these arts have a-sort-of (*quidam*) common bond, and are united (*contineo*) as if by a-sort-of relationship (*cognatio*) between them.
4. It is more difficult to find the end than the beginning of this speech ; let us, however, rather pray that he may go into exile than complain (of it).
5. When this news was heard, a sudden panic came upon (*occupo*, 1) the minds of the citizens, as if the enemy were already at the very gates.
6. But why do I use these witnesses, as if the case were doubtful or obscure? Surely the matter is clearer than sunlight.
7. Where in the world is he? On seeing me he fled out of my sight as though the Furies themselves were pursuing him.
8. The more money he receives the more he desires. Who of you is so ignorant as not to have heard that?
9. At that time there were in that place as many ships as ever came from Greece to Troy.
10. Such was the joy of the citizens, that they all went forth to meet the victorious army as it returned (20) from the battle.
11. The disaster of which we have heard is such as this state has never suffered within (*post*) the memory of man [men].
12. The rule (*jus*) of war is that (*ut*) those who have conquered shall command those they have conquered as (*quemadmodum*) they wish.
13. I said at the beginning that I did not wish to say more (pl.) about their wickedness than the case demanded.
14. Though he should offer me any (50) reward, I would never undertake so disgraceful a business as this (110).



*Exercise 104.*

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. I now understand that, when he reaches (91, *a*) the camp, there will be no one so foolish as not to see that a conspiracy has been made, no one so wicked as not to confess (it).
2. After he had (91, *b*) learned by-means-of spies that the Suebi had retreated into the woods, Caesar, fearing a scarcity of corn, because, as we have shown above, the Germans pay very little attention to agriculture, determined not to advance further.
3. There they found a ford and attempted to lead across a part of their forces, in order to storm the camp, if they could, and cut down the bridge.
4. The war would have been already concluded if a dictator had been appointed. Who is there who does not see that our general is too old a man to bear such labour?
5. Meanwhile he sent to the cavalry, who had gone-on (*antecedo*), to tell them not to join battle, and if they were attacked themselves to hold out till he himself approached with the rest of the army.
6. He said that the money would be of great use (11) to him, and promised that, if he [had] heard anything about that matter, he would let me know, before he went away from home.
7. The enemy having been overcome in battle, as soon as they had recovered themselves from their flight, sent envoys to Caesar to beg for peace, and promised that they would give hostages and do what he commanded.
8. We don't want to fight, but if any war should arise we should have enough men, ships and money. Do not forget that our ancestors used to sing this song in the temples of the Muses.
9. It is for this cause that we are ready to undergo all dangers. It was to defend this city against the conspiracy of abandoned men that the consul adopted this plan.
10. Calling together his friends, he thanked them for (40) rescuing him from so serious a danger.

## Exercise 105.

## SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

## Indirect Statement, 1. (§ 61-65.)

1. We, therefore, who have undergone so many dangers for your sake, hope to receive some reward.
2. They reported that on account of the violence of the storm all the ships would have sunk (3) if the wind had not changed.
3. Turning (18) to his soldiers, he promised (65, *f*) to give a reward to the man (107, *b*) who first [had] entered the city.
4. It is said that the standard-bearer of the tenth legion was the first (110) to leap into the sea and reach the shore.
5. Being blamed for surrendering the town, he said he had neglected nothing which a good citizen ought to do.
6. They replied that in a few years they would all be driven from their territories, unless he came to their help.
7. Hearing this, he perceived it would be dangerous to the Roman people that so great a multitude should cross the Rhine.
8. They promised to give hostages and to do what he commanded, and there is no (55) doubt that they are very desirous of peace.
9. It seems that Socrates, after conversing a long while with his friends about death, drank the poison with calmness.
10. Nobody, he said, would be so foolish as not to see that a conspiracy had been made.
11. I will show in another place how (*quantum*) important it is for the common safety that there should be two consuls in the state.
12. It is useful that there should be many accusers in the state, in order that audacity may be-restrained (*contineo*, 2) by fear.
13. The war would have been quickly concluded, he replied, if the senate had sent the forces they had promised.
14. That an obscure (*ignobilis*) state should of its own accord make war on the Roman people was scarcely to be believed (28).
15. Nothing, he said, could be more pleasant to him than to pass the rest of his life in cultivating the fields.

*Exercise 106.*

## SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

**Indirect Statement, 2 [Ut and Quod].** (§ 66 and 67.)

1. It happened that neither this nor the previous year was any ship lost which carried soldiers.
2. It was impossible for Cicero to remain any longer at Rome ; he therefore betook himself to Pompey's camp, leaving his wife and daughter at home.
3. It remains for me to explain to you in a few words why I desire to speak on behalf of this young man.
4. Hence it happened also that some soldiers who had gone (Subj.) into the woods were cut-off (*intercipio*) by the sudden arrival of the cavalry.
5. They differ from the others in this (respect), namely—that (67) they do not allow their children to approach them.
6. As-for (67, v) your threatening me with torture and death, I value my life at a very low price.
7. If we do not go to the help of this man it will come-to-pass that no one will wish to be called the friend of the R. people.
8. As regards our having taken up arms, it was for the sake of defending our own land that we have done this.
9. So far from wishing to injure you, I rejoice greatly that you are enjoying such prosperity.
10. For many causes he determined that he must cross the Rhine: and of these (111) the most important (*justissimus*) was the fact—that he wished to show the Germans what the power of the Roman people was.
11. One thing hinders me from undertaking this, (namely) the fact—that I am too poor to complete the work at my own expense.
12. To-this must be-added the-fact—that he was unwilling to return in the life-time of his father (23).

*Exercise 107.*

## SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

## Indirect Question (§ 68-72).

1. Since (*quoniam*) the decree has not yet been written-out, I will explain to you from (*ex*) memory what the senate has decided (*censeo*, 2).
2. We have never been able to find-out whether he resigned the consulship of his own accord or by your advice.
3. Whether it came-to-pass by accident or by the purpose of the immortal gods, there is no doubt the ship has sunk.
4. We do not yet know if he is willing to come to our help ; but if he does come we shall have nothing to fear (27).
5. If we had understood the position of affairs we should not have spent the whole day in looking-for the witnesses.
6. I hope to explain the matter that you may see the difference between my opinion and yours.
7. In appearance he was most eager to make peace (26), but whether he is really a friend or an enemy is not for us to inquire.
8. When he was informed of the extent of the disaster he despatched horsemen to see if the camp had been fortified.
9. We must conquer or die : but whether we live or die, let not our children be ashamed of us (30).
10. If they had known the greatness of our state (72), the extent of the population, and the character of the country, they would never have resisted.
11. He said that the men who had been the chiefs of the conspiracy, perceiving what a disaster they had brought on (*infero*, 46) the state, had fled.
12. It is uncertain whether he fled to Spain or to Greece ; and whether he is still living or not is of little importance.
13. As soon as we reached the village, the inhabitants inquired our destination (72) and the object of our journey.
14. Knowing what influence they had among their fellow-citizens, Caesar asked if they were willing to help him.
15. I do not know his origin ; but whether he is born of a noble race or the son of a slave, he is worthy of the highest honours.

*Exercise 108.*

## SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

**Indirect Command (§ 73-76).**

1. On ascertaining this, he commanded them to hurl their weapons from-a-distance (*procul*) and not to approach any-nearer.
2. I exhort you to abide in this opinion and not to fear the violence or threats of anyone.
3. Ariovistus demanded that Caesar should not bring anyone with him to the conference (*colloquium*).
4. The senate has decreed that the consuls shall see that the state receives no harm (13).
5. I am not ashamed to say this, and (55) I have never been persuaded (30) that peace is always to be preferred to war.
6. They entreated him with tears not to remain there, and warned him that the enemy were only a few miles off.
7. Although the buildings were burning on every side, the brave (13, *b*) Horatius could by no means be persuaded to retreat.
8. I am afraid the journey is too long for your father to undertake in the middle of winter.
9. He advises Labienus to prevent fires being made in the camp, that no indication may be given of (their) approach.
10. He demanded of Ariovistus that he should not bring any Germans across the Rhine, and threatened to make war on him if he did.
11. They demand that either he shall assign lands to them or suffer them to hold those lands which they have acquired (*possideo*) by arms.
12. I cannot help fearing that he will never return. See that you do not say anything about this matter to his daughter.
13. Labienus had been ordered (*impero*) not to move his camp before he saw fires on the top of the hill.
14. They warned him that the road was not sufficiently safe, and advised him to travel by the other route.
15. Hearing this, he made liberal promises [promised liberally], exhorted them to abide in that opinion, and explained what he wanted.

*Exercise 109.*

## RECAPITULATORY.

1. On hearing this the towns-men, flung themselves at his feet, and entreated that they might not be forced to burn with their own hands the most beautiful city of the whole of Gaul, which was an ornament and protection (11) to the state. They said they could easily defend themselves by the nature of the situation, because the town, surrounded (as it was) on nearly (*prope*) all sides by the river and the marsh, had only one and (that) a narrow (*angustus*) approach (*aditus*).
2. These men, having been previously instructed (*edoceo*) what to reply when questioned, said that they were legionary (*legionarius*) soldiers ; that, driven (*adduco*) by hunger and want, they had secretly (*clam*) escaped from camp (to see) if they could find any corn or cattle in the fields ; that the whole army was suffering-from [was pressed by] a similar want of food, and that no one had sufficient strength to undergo the labour ; that therefore the general had decided to withdraw (*deduco*) his army in three days if they [had] made-no-progress (*nihil proficio*) in the assault (*oppugnatio*) of the town.
3. Elated by the hope of a speedy (*celer*) victory, by the flight of the enemy, and by the successful (*secundus*) engagement of the previous day, they imagined that there was nothing that they could not attain (*consequor*) by valour, and did not make an end of pursuing before they approached the wall and gates of the town.
4. Seeing that the battle-was-being-fought on disadvantageous (*iniquus*) ground, and that the forces of the enemy were increasing, he sent-word to Sextius, whom he had left as a protection to the camp, to lead out the cohorts and place them (*constituo*) on (*ab*) the left flank of the enemy, that if he saw our men driven from their ground he might prevent the enemy from pursuing.
5. On returning to his own (people) he was charged with treachery (*proditio*) on-the-ground-that he had moved his camp nearer to the Romans, that he had departed with all the cavalry, and left the army without a commander.

## Exercise 110.

## SUBOBLIQUE.

*Exceptions to the Rule for Suboblique Clauses (§ 125).*

1. When he had advanced a few miles it was reported to him that Ariovistus, with all his forces, was hastening to seize (*occupo*) Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani.
2. It is reported to Caesar that they intend to travel through the lands of the Sequani, which are not far from our province
3. They say that when the old man approached the Lacedaemonians, who, being ambassadors, sat in a particular (*certus*) place, they all rose (*consurgo*).
4. He did this mainly (*maxime*) for the following reason, (namely) that he did not wish the place whence the Helvetii had departed to be empty (*vaco*, I), lest the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, should cross.
5. I see that there are two opinions : one that of Silanus, the other that of C. Caesar. The former considers that these men, who have attempted to deprive all of us of life and to extinguish (*deleo*) the name of the Roman people, ought not to enjoy life for (one) moment (*punctum*) of time.
6. He learns that the ships, being driven back by the storm, had not been able to keep their course, and had returned to the same place whence they had started.
7. They say that the wisest man of that state was Solon, the man who wrote (*scripserit*) the laws which they use at-the-present-day (*hodie*).
8. Who is so foolish as to deny that all that we see, and especially this city, is controlled (*administro*) by the power of the immortal gods ?
9. Remember that we have to fear not so-much (*tam*) that army as these men who have deserted the army ; and they are the more to be feared because they perceive that I know what they are planning (*cogito*).
10. For I will so speak with you that I shall seem to be influenced (*permoveo*) not by hatred, by which I ought (to be influenced), but by compassion (*misericordia*), which is in-no-way (*nulla*) due to you [is owed to you].

*Exercise 111.*

## SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN OR. OBLIQUA (§ 123).

Convert the following from Direct to Indirect Speech, both in Primary and Historic Sequence, supplying a Verb of *saying, asking, or commanding.*

For the Tense of the Clause Verb see table, § 129.

Ex. *I will send the forces which I have with me.*

PRIM. Dicit se copias, quas secum habeat, missurum.

HIST. Dixit se copias, quas secum haberet, missurum.

1. We will defend the liberty which we have received from our ancestors.
2. We must move our camp, because the enemy are beginning to be troublesome.
3. As soon as I reach Athens I will send a messenger.
4. If we wish to enjoy peace let us undertake this war.
5. Cicero is unable to start, because the wind is not favourable.
6. We must wait here till the messengers return.
7. What I have undertaken I will endure as long as I can.
8. Unless we send help the city will soon be taken.
9. If you believe these witnesses why do you not acquit him ?
10. You would have avoided suspicion if you had remained.
11. We will make war on you if you ravage our territory.
12. The corn which is in the fields is not yet ripe.
13. Throw away what you are carrying and follow me.
14. I shall never be persuaded to adopt that plan.
15. What state is so firm that it cannot be overthrown ?
16. Those who were the chiefs of the conspiracy have fled.
17. Do not move your camp before you see the fires.
18. When you have done the work you will receive the reward.
19. They will set out as soon as they receive my letters.
20. Is not this task too difficult for me to undertake ?
21. If you do this we will make peace with you.
22. If you should be asked what would you reply (130) ?
23. If the wind had been favourable we should have sailed.
24. If anyone were to say such things who would believe him ?



*Exercise 112.*

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

*Changes of Pronouns (§ 127).*

Convert the following from Direct to Indirect (§ 122).

I. **Statements.**

- 'I will explain the matter to you' (said he).
- 'We are waging war against them' (said they).
- 'You will never persuade me' (he replied).
- 'He has always been friendly to us' (said they).
- 'I wrote the letter with my own hand' (said he).
- 'We came hither with your brother' (said they).
- 'I have not yet been informed of his arrival' (said he).
- 'By your prudence you have saved the state' (said they).
- 'You will soon see their camp' (said he).
- 'They have often laid waste our lands' (said they).
- 'The Gauls will burn all your towns' (he said).
- 'They are defending their city against us' (they said).

II. **Commands.**

- 'Do not despair of your safety' (he commanded).
- 'Send your children to me as hostages' (he commanded).
- 'Let us not deprive him of liberty' (they advised).
- 'Cast away your arms and make peace with us' (they advised).
- 'Do not make war on our allies' (they advised).
- 'Let us leave our own lands and seize on theirs' (they advised).

III. **Questions.**

- Why did you not inform me of his danger ? (he asked.)
- Who is willing to speak for them ? (he asked.)
- Have you not often overcome their forces ? (he asked.)
- Did not the consul save his country ? (he asked.)
- How long shall we endure his insolence ? (he asked.)
- To whom shall we entrust our safety ? (he asked.)

*Exercise 113.*

## ORATIO OBLIQUA (§ 126-130).

- (a) Translate the following.  
 (b) Convert the English from Direct to Indirect Speech :  
 (i) in Primary, (ii) in Historic Sequence.  
 (c) Convert the Latin into Or. Obl. : (i) in Primary,  
 (ii) in Historic Sequence.

1. Causa quae sit, videtis ; nunc quid agendum sit, considerate. Primum mihi videtur de genere belli, deinde de magnitudine esse dicendum. Genus est belli ejusmodi, quod maxime vestros animos excitare atque inflammare ad studium persequendi debeat, in quo agitur populi Romani gloria, quae vobis a majoribus tradita est ; agitur salus sociorum pro qua multa majores vestri magna et gravia bella gesserunt.
2. Quae cum ita sint, Catilina, perge quo coepisti ; egredere aliquando ex urbe : patent portae ; proficiscere. Magno me metu liberabis, dummodo inter me atque te murus intersit. Nobiscum versari diutius non potes : non feram, non patiar, non sinam.
3. Testes vero jam omnes orae, omnes exterae gentes, denique maria omnia. Quis enim toto mari locus per hos annos tam firmum habuit praesidium ut tutus esset ? Quis navigavit, qui non se aut mortis aut servitutis periculo committeret. Quam provinciam tenuistis a praedonibus liberam per hosce annos ? Quod vectigal vobis tutum fuit ? Quem socium defendistis ? Quam multas existimatis insulas esse desertas ?
4. Indiciis expositis atque editis senatum consului de summa republica quid fieri placeret. Dictae sunt a principibus acerrimae atque fortissimae sententiae, quas senatus sine ulla varietate est consecutus. Et quoniam nondum est

---

perscriptum senatus-consultum, ex memoria vobis, Quirites, quid senatus censuerit exponam.

5. 'Quo proficiscimur' inquit 'milites? Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes civitatis ab Romanis interfecti sunt. Haec ab ipsis cognoscite, qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt: nam ego, fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis, dolore prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, pronuntiare.'

*Exercise 114.*

## ORATIO OBLIQUA (§ 126-130).

Convert the following into Oratio Recta (*i.e.* the words of the speaker).

*Divitiacus speaks.*

Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut juraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque jurejurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed pejus victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus in eorum finibus consedisset, tertiamque partem agri, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere juberet, quod Harudum milia hominum xxiv ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur.

*Ariovistus speaks (to Caesar).*

Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo jure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo jure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptassent, et superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem injuriam facere qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides non redditurum neque iis neque eorum sociis bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent. Si id non fecissent, longe iis fraternum nomen Pop. Romani a futurum.

*Titurius speaks.*

Se sero (*too late*) facturos cum majores manus hostium convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis

esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem profectum in Italiam, neque aliter Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse. Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam; si nihil esset durius, nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros.

*Exercise 115.*

## ORATIO OBLIQUA (CONTINUOUS). (§ 126-130.)

Translate into Latin (Direct); then convert into Indirect in (1) Primary, (2) Historic Sequence.

1. Long-ago, Catilina, you ought (30) to have been led to death by the order of the consul. But that which ought to have been done long ago I have not yet been persuaded to do. Then at length will I put you to death, when no one can be found so wicked, so abandoned, as not to confess that it was rightly done. As long as there is anyone to defend you you shall live. Do not suppose that I am ignorant what you were doing on that night. Do you not understand that all your plans are clearer than the light of the day? When you have (91, a) heard what I am about to say you will perceive that the safety of the state is dearer to me than life itself.
2. You have at length the opportunity which you desire. In three hours we can reach the place where the Romans have pitched their camp. The forces which Labienus has with him are scarcely sufficient for defending the camp. If, therefore, we fight a battle there is no doubt that we shall conquer; if, on the other hand, the Romans retreat to their camp, they will soon be compelled to surrender by the scarcity of food. Since this is the case, why do we hesitate? Let us not let slip so great an opportunity of recovering our freedom. Is it not better to perish a thousand-times than to live as slaves?
3. If you wish to fight, I am ready to draw out my forces; if you wish to enjoy peace, why do you seek to deprive me of the tribute which the Gauls have paid of their own accord? As for (67, v) my leading the Germans across the Rhine, I did this for the sake of defending myself.

I have not made war on your allies ; why do you come into my territories ?

4. It is not by valour nor on the battle-field (*acie*) that the Romans have conquered, but by their knowledge of siege-warfare (*obsidio*), a thing in which we ourselves are unskilled. If anyone expects that in war all results (*proventus rerum*) will be favourable (*secundus*) he is mistaken. I never wished the town to be defended, a fact (*res* : 107, *h*) of which you are witnesses, but it has resulted (*fit*) from the imprudence of our allies that this loss (*clades*) has been received.
5. I am not going to say anything about the opinion of those who call the most disgraceful slavery by the name of surrender (*deditio*), and I do not think that they ought to be reckoned in the number of citizens. Let me deal (*mihi res sit*) with those who approve of (*probc*, 1) a sortie. To be unable to bear pain for a little while is faintheartedness (*animi mollitia*), not valour. Men are more easily found to offer themselves voluntarily to death than to endure hardship with patience. Do not deprive of your assistance these men who for the sake of your safety have neglected their own danger, and do not by your folly and rashness (*temeritas*) subject (*subjicio*) the whole of Gaul to perpetual slavery. Because they have not come at the appointed day, do you doubt of their good faith (*fides*) ? Let us do what our ancestors formerly did, who, being driven into their towns and reduced (*subigo*, 3) by similar (*similis*) want of food, supported (*tolero*, 1) life on the bodies of those who seemed useless for war. What else do the Romans seek or what do they desire but to settle (*consido*, 3) on the lands of those whom they have ascertained to be powerful in war ? If you are ignorant what is going on in more distant (*longinquus*) states, look at (*respicio*) the neighbouring (part of) Gaul which has been included (*redigo*) in the province, and is oppressed with perpetual slavery.

6. It was not on the battle-field (*acies*) that we gave up our arms ; but when we had fought all day standing on the bodies of the slain we betook ourselves to the camp. For the rest of that day and the whole of the night we defended our rampart, wearied (as we were) with labour and exhausted with wounds ; on the following day, since we were cut off (*prohibeo*) from water by the victorious army, and there was no hope of breaking-out, we at last agreed (*paciscor*) on a price at which we should be let-go (*dimitto*) and gave up our arms, in which there was now no help. We had heard that our ancestors redeemed themselves from the Gauls for gold, and that our fathers sent envoys to Tarentum for the purpose of redeeming the captives.
  
7. Unless there is any help in Caesar and the Roman people all the Gauls must do what the Helvetii have done, (namely: § 66, obs. 2) leave their homes and seek for another abode. If this is reported to Ariovistus, we have no doubt that he will inflict the severest punishment on the hostages he has with him.



# APPENDICES



# APPENDIX I.

## THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

### § 1. FOUR FORMS OF THE SENTENCE.

1. Subject + Transitive Verb + Object.

Ex. *The king took the city* = rex urbem cepit.

2. Subject + Intransit. Vb. (or Passive of Trans. Vb.).

Ex. *Years flee* = anni fugiunt; *books are read* = libri leguntur.

3. Subj. + Factitive Vb. + Obj. + Obj. Complement.

Ex. *They declared Cicero consul.*

Ciceronem consulem declaraverunt.

4. Subj. + Copul. Vb. (or Pass. of Fact. Vb.) + Subj. Complement.

Ex. *Life is short* = Vita est brevis.

*Cicero was declared consul* = C. consul declaratus est.

### § 2. THE SUBJECT.

The Subject of a Latin Sentence is in the Nominative (except in Indirect Statements, Accus. and Infin. § 62).

N.B.—i. With many Impersonal Verbs (pudet, etc.) the English Subject becomes the Object in Latin. See § 30.

ii. *I have a son* may be expressed 'est mihi filius' (*i.e.* there is to me a son); Engl. Obj. = Lat. Subj.

## THE VERB.

### § 3. Transitive and Intransitive.

Many English Verbs, as *roll, turn, move, sink, change, land*, etc., are used both Transitive and Intransitively :

Trans., *I ring the bell*; Intrans., *the bell rings*.

The corresponding Latin Verb can sometimes be used in the same way: thus *delay*, *moror*, and *hasten*, *festino*, are both Trans. and Intrans. More commonly the Active Voice of the Latin Verb can only be used Transitivity, and the Intransitive meaning is denoted in one of three ways: viz. by

i. The Passive Voice:

*I feed sheep* = oves pasco. *Sheep feed* = oves pascuntur.

ii. Active with Reflexive Pronoun:

*I move a stone* = saxum moveo. *He moved* = se movit.

So, *roll*, *volvo*; *change*, *muto*; *turn*, *verto*; *sink*, *mergo*, etc.

or, iii. by a different Verb: as

|                             |         |           |          |
|-----------------------------|---------|-----------|----------|
| <i>assemble</i> , convoco,  | Trans., | convenio, | Intrans. |
| <i>burn</i> , incendo, uro, | "       | ardeo,    | "        |
| <i>increase</i> , augeo,    | "       | cresco,   | "        |
| <i>land</i> , expono,       | "       | egredior, | "        |

§ 4. Latin Trans. Vb. = Engl. Intrans. Vb. + Preposition.

e.g. *I hope-for peace* = pacem spero.

|                           |                            |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| So, <i>aim-at</i> , peto. | <i>laugh-at</i> , irrideo. | <i>look-for</i> , quaero.  |
| <i>fly-from</i> , fugio.  | <i>long-for</i> , cupio.   | <i>pray-for</i> , opto.    |
| <i>listen-to</i> , audio. | <i>look-at</i> , specto.   | <i>wait-for</i> , expecto. |

§ 5. (a) Factitive Verbs.

The following are some of the commonest:

|                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>make</i> , facio.             | <i>choose</i> , lego, deligo. |
| <i>call</i> , voco, appello.     | <i>elect</i> , eligo, creo.   |
| <i>think</i> , puto, habeo.      | <i>appoint</i> , constituo.   |
| <i>reckon</i> , aestimo, judico. | <i>render</i> , reddo.        |

N.B.—Factitive Verbs are Transitive Verbs used in a special manner. Most of the above may be used as ordinary Transitive Verbs, *i.e.* without a Complement.

(b) Copulative Verbs.

The following are some of the commonest (besides *sum*):

|                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>become</i> , fio.   | <i>appear</i> , appareo. |
| <i>remain</i> , maneo. | <i>am born</i> , nascor. |
| <i>seem</i> , videor.  | <i>turn out</i> , evado. |

and the Passive Voice of Factitive Verbs.

(c) **Prolative Infinitive.**

Ex. *I am not able to do it* = *facere non possum.*

The following are some of the Verbs most commonly followed by a Prolative Infinitive.

|                             |                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>am wont</i> , soleo.     | <i>begin</i> , incipio.     | <i>desire</i> , cupio.        |
| <i>am willing</i> , volo.   | <i>cease</i> , desino.      | <i>determine</i> , constituo. |
| <i>am able</i> , possum.    | <i>compel</i> , cogo.       | <i>hesitate</i> , dubito.     |
| <i>am unwilling</i> , nolo. | <i>dare</i> , audeo.        | <i>suffer</i> , patior.       |
|                             | See § 118, <i>a</i> , note. |                               |

## § 6.

## THE OBJECT.

The Object of a Latin Transitive Verb is in the Accusative, § 1.

The following Verbs (though Transitive in English) take Genitive, Dative, or Ablative in Latin.

## § 7. Genitive.

*pity*, misereor, miseret (Impersonal; see § 30).  
*forget*, obliviscor (sometimes Acc.).  
*remember*, memini, reminiscor (sometimes Acc.).

## § 8. Dative.

|                                       |                              |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>believe</i> , credo.               | <i>obey</i> , pareo.         |
| <i>benefit</i> , prosum.              | <i>pardon</i> , ignosco.     |
| <i>command</i> , impero.              | <i>persuade</i> , persuadeo. |
| <i>envy</i> , invideo.                | <i>please</i> , placeo.      |
| <i>favour</i> , faveo.                | <i>resist</i> , resisto.     |
| <i>hurt</i> , noceo.                  | <i>satisfy</i> , satisfacio. |
| <i>indulge</i> , indulgeo.            | <i>spare</i> , parco.        |
| <i>lawful</i> , <i>it is</i> , licet. | <i>succour</i> { succurro.   |
| <i>marry</i> , nubo.                  | { subvenio.                  |
| <i>meet</i> , occurro.                | <i>trust</i> , confido.      |

## § 9. Ablative.

|                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>enjoy</i> , fruor.        | <i>perform</i> , fungor. |
| <i>lack</i> , { careo.       | <i>use</i> , utor.       |
| { egeo (also Gen.)           |                          |
| <i>gain</i> , potior ( „ „ ) |                          |

N.B.—The above lists are, of course, not exhaustive. Among others, words like *vaco*, *irascor*, *vescor*, are excluded as not being followed by Direct Obj. in English. For *vescor*, see ‘*on*’; for *irascor*, see ‘*with*.’

## § 10. Double Accusative.

A few Verbs, as *doceo*, *teach*, *celo*, *conceal*, *rogo*, *ask*, *posco*, *flagito*, *demand*, are sometimes followed by Acc. of Person and Acc. of Thing.

*I ask for your opinion* = *rogo te sententiam*.

The Acc. of Thing is retained in the Passive.

*Being asked his opinion* = *rogatus sententiam*.

N.B.—i. *Posco* and *flagito* are also constructed with Acc. of Thing and *ab* + Abl. of Person; *doceo*, *inform*, Acc. of Pers., *de* + Abl. of Thing.

ii. The 'thing asked' is more often expressed by a Subst. Clause. See § 73.

## § 11.

## THE COMPLEMENT.

The Complement of a  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Copulative Verb agrees with the} \\ \text{Subject (§ 1).} \\ \text{Factitive Verb agrees with the Object} \\ \text{ (§ 1).} \end{array} \right.$

But the following words (among others) when forming a Complement usually stand in the Dative.

*This was a grief to us* : *hoc nobis dolori fuit*.

*He left this legion as a protection for the ships*.

*Hanc legionem navibus praesidio reliquit*.

*He came to my help*, i.e. *as a help to me*.

*Venit mihi auxilio*.

*argumento*, *proof*.

*auxilio*, *help*.

*cordi*, *dear*.

*curae*, *cause of care*.

*dolori*, *grief*.

*dono*, *gift*.

*exemplo*, *example*.

*impedimento*, *hindrance*.

*ludibrio*, *jest*.

*odio*, *hateful*.

*ornamento*, *ornament*.

*praesidio*, *protection*.

*saluti*, *safety*.

*subsidio*, *support*.

All the above, except *dono*, may be used as Complements to *esse*; *dono* with *dare*; *auxilio*, *subsidio*, *praesidio* with *venire*, *mittere*, *relinquere*, etc.

## QUALIFICATION.

## § 12. Adjectival.

A Noun may be qualified by an Adjective or its equivalent, viz. Adjectival Phrase or Clause.

1. Simple Adjective. A *wise* man holds his peace.
2. Adjectival Phrase. A man *of wisdom* holds his peace.
3. Adjectival Clause. A man *who is wise* holds his peace.

## Construction in Latin :

## § 13. 1. Simple Adjective.

The Latin construction usually corresponds with the English ; but

- (a) Certain English Adjectives denoting *measure* and *quantity* are sometimes represented in Latin by a Neuter Adjective or Pronoun used Substantively and followed by a Genitive. Thus :

*Much time* = multum temporis ; *some money* = aliquid pecuniae.

Among words used thus are :

|        |          |         |          |
|--------|----------|---------|----------|
| multum | plurimum | minus   | minimum  |
| tantum | quantum  | nimum   | nihil    |
| quid   | quod     | aliquid | hoc etc. |

- (b) An Adjective prefixed (in English) to a Proper Name or a Name denoting a class is usually placed thus :

*The wise Socrates* = Socrates, vir sapientissimus. (Apposition.)  
*The warlike Suebi* = Suebi, gens bellicosissima.

See also notes on Self, § 52 ; His, § 53 ; Some and Any, § 50, 51.

## § 14. 2. Adjectival Phrases.

Participial Phrases. See § 17.

Prepositional Phrases. See Tables of Prepositions § 37 sqq.

**Caution.** In English an Adverbial Preposition Phrase is often used Adjectivally, i.e. to qualify a Noun. Thus : 'The men in the city.' In turning such a phrase into Latin an Adj. Clause or Participial Phrase must generally be used. Thus :

*The men in the city* = those who were in the city.  
*A man in white garments* = a man clothed in white garments.

3. Adjectival Clauses. See § 105. .

## § 15. Adverbial.

A Verb or Adjective may be qualified by an Adverb or equivalent.

|                     |          |                         |
|---------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| 1. Simple Adverb    | he acted | <i>wisely.</i>          |
| 2. Adverbial Phrase | „        | <i>with wisdom.</i>     |
| 3. Adverbial Clause | „        | <i>as wise men act.</i> |

## Construction in Latin :

## § 16. 1. Simple Adverb.

The Latin construction usually corresponds to the English, but

i. Sometimes a Latin Adj. = Engl. Adverb. Thus :

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>I came unwillingly</i>    | = <i>invitus veni.</i>       |
| <i>He arrived safely</i>     | = <i>incolumis pervenit.</i> |
| <i>He went away silently</i> | = <i>tacitus abiit.</i>      |

ii. The Engl. Adv. 'much' before a Comparative is often translated by the Latin Ablative 'multo': thus, *much* shorter = *multo brevior.*

## 2. Adverbial Phrases.

Time and Place. See § 34, 36.

Prepositional Phrases. See § 37.

Participial Phrases. See § 17-24.

3. Adverbial Clauses. See § 77-104.

## PARTICIPLES.

§ 17. The Latin Verb has only three Participles.

2 Active: *regens* = *ruling*; *recturus*, *about to rule.*

1 Passive: *rectus* = *ruled* or *having been ruled.*

Deponents have all three Participles with Active meaning.

## § 18. Present Participle.

The Engl. Present Participle is represented by the Lat. Pres. Partic. only when an action is represented as actually going on.

*He is slain fighting bravely* = *fortissime pugnans occiditur.*



More often, the Latin Perfect Participle must be used (especially with Deponent Verbs) or an Adverbial Clause.

*Starting at dawn, he marched, etc.* = *prima luce profectus, etc.*

*Fearing this, he returned* = *haec veritus, rediit.*

*Seeing this, he determined, etc.* = *cum haec videret, etc.*

See also Abl. Absol. § 21.

### § 19. Perfect Participle.

There being no Latin Perf. Part. with Active meaning (except in Deponents), a phrase containing an Engl. Perf. Part. Act. cannot be literally translated unless a Deponent can be used : e.g.

*Having spoken thus, he went away, haec locutus abiit.*

Where there is no Lat. Deponent of corresponding meaning, either

1. The English Participial Phrase may be thrown into Passive form, and the Ablative Absolute used (see § 21, 22) ;
2. Or an Adverbial Clause may be employed.

*Having done this, he went away.*

*Hoc facto, (or cum hoc fecisset) abiit.*

*Having heard that the enemy were at hand, he set out.*

*Cum audivisset hostes adesse, profectus est.*

§ 20. N.B.—A Participial Phrase may often be employed to express

- (i.) an Engl. Adv. Clause (see § 120) ;
- (ii.) a Phrase formed of 'ou,' 'after,' with Verb-Noun ;
- (iii.) a Co-ordinate sentence : e.g.

|                                             |   |                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------|
| i. <i>When he had said this he sat down</i> | } | <i>= having said this, he sat down.</i> |
| ii. <i>After saying this he sat down</i>    |   |                                         |
| iii. <i>He said this and sat down.</i>      |   |                                         |

### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 21. The circumstances under which an action takes place are often indicated in Latin by the Ablative Absolute, *i.e.* a Noun (or Pronoun) and a Participle standing together in the Ablative Case, and forming the equivalent of an Adv. Clause. See § 20.

*The leader being wounded, the soldiers fled.*

*Duce vulnerato, milites fugerunt.*

*Having given the signal, he joined battle.*

*Signo dato, proelium commisit. (See § 19.)*

## § 22. Caution.

Abl. Abs. cannot be used when the Noun with which the Participle would agree forms any part (Subj., Obj., &c.) of the principal sentence. Compare the following :

- { *The kings having been driven out, consuls were created.*  
Regibus exactis, consules creati sunt.  
*The kings, having been driven out, fled to Etruria.*  
Reges, exacti, in Etruriam se contulerunt.
- { *The general having spoken thus, the signal was given.*  
Duce haec verba locuto, signum datum est.  
*The general, having spoken thus, gave the signal.*  
Dux haec verba locutus signum dedit.
- { *Having taken the city, he returned = urbe capta, rediit.*  
*Having taken the city, he burnt it = urbem captam incendit.*

## § 23. The Abl. Abs. is most commonly formed with the Perf. Partic., but also—

- Pres. Part.** omnibus aspicientibus, (lit.) = *all looking on*, i.e. *in the sight of all*.
- Noun + Adj.** rege vivo, lit. *the king being alive*, i.e. *in his lifetime*.
- Noun + Noun.** te duce, lit. *you being leader*, i.e. *under your command*.  
me auctore, lit. *I being the adviser*, i.e. *by my advice*.  
consule Planco : *Plancus being consul*, i.e. *in P.'s consulship*.

- § 24. N.B.— i. The Noun of an Abl. Abs. phrase may be qualified by an Adjective or Genitive: e.g.  
*Magna parte navium amissa, reliquas reficere constituit.*
- ii. The Participle of an Abl. Abs. may be qualified by an Adverb or Adv. Phrase.  
*Bello celeriter confecto ; omnibus rebus ad bellum paratis.*
- iii. Two Nouns with one Participle or two Part. with one Noun :  
*Omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis ; multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus.*

## VERB-NOUN AND GERUND.

§ 25. The English Verb-Noun in *-ing* is expressed by the Latin Infinitive standing as Subject or Object ; otherwise by the Gerund. Thus :

|              |                               |                        |
|--------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. (Subj.) | <i>writing is easy</i>        | scribere est facile.   |
| Acc.         | { (Obj.) <i>stop writing</i>  | desine scribere.       |
|              | { (Prep.) <i>prepared for</i> | ad scribendum paratus. |
| Gen.         | <i>love of</i>                | amor scribendi.        |
| Dat.         | <i>pay heed to</i>            | dare operam scribendo. |
| Abl.         | <i>we learn by</i>            | scribendo discimus.    |

**Caution.**—Distinguish Pres. Participle in *-ing* from Verb-Noun in *-ing*.  
Partic. *I hear him talking.* Vb.-Noun. *Talking is useless.*

## § 26. GERUNDIVE ATTRACTION.

The Gerundive is an Adjectival form (-ndus; -nda, -ndum) of the Gerund.

The Gerundive Attraction is used instead of Gerund with Obj. in Acc.

Thus *instead of* petendi pacem } = *of seeking peace.*  
*write* pacis petendae }

The Object takes the case of the Gerund, and the Gerundive then agrees with it in Gender, Number and Case. Thus :

|          | Gerund + Obj.   | Gerundive Attraction.   |
|----------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Acc.     | ad dandum pacem | becomes ad pacem dandam |
| Gen.     | dandi pacem     | „ pacis dandae          |
| Dat.     | dando pacem     | „ paci dandae           |
| Acc. Pl. | ad dandum leges | „ ad leges dandas.      |

Caution.—Gerundive Attraction cannot be used except where the verb is Transitive, *i.e.* governs Acc.: thus, *By sparing the men* = *Parcendo viris, not Viris parcendis.*

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IMPLYING NECESSITY.

§ 27. The Nom. Gerund (-dum) of Intrans. Verbs (N.B.), and The Gerundive (-ndus, -nda, -ndum) of Transitive Verbs are used with *est, sunt, erat, erant, etc.*, to denote that an action *must* or *ought to be* or *has to be* done. (See also § 33.)

The Person who has to do the action is denoted by a Dative of Agent (§ 28, N.B.)

N.B.—Intransit. Vbs. here include Trans. Vbs. used without Obj.

## § 28. A. Gerund of Intransitive Verbs.

*I must (ought to, have to) run* = *mihi currendum est.*

*I had to go or ought to have gone* = *mihi eundum erat.*

*We must use this plan* = *hoc consilio nobis utendum est.*

N.B.—If the Verb governs a Dat. use Abl. of Agent for the Person, to avoid confusion: *I must spare you* = *Tibi a me parcendum est, not Tibi mihi parcendum est.*

## § 29. B. Gerundive of Transitive Verbs.

1. Where the English sentence is in Passive form, translate it directly ; thus :

*Virtue is to be praised (by us)* = *Virtus nobis colenda est.*  
*Ships had to be sent* = *Naves mittendae erant.*

2. Where the Engl. sentence is in Active form, turn it into Passive ; thus :

*We must till the fields*  
 = *Fields must be tilled by us* } = *Agri nobis sunt colendi.*

N.B.—Any of the above constructions may be used in Indirect Statement, i.e. Acc. and Infin. : *navis mittenda est ; dixit navem mittendam esse.*

Ought, Should. See § 33.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

## § 30. Impersonal Verbs are used only in the 3rd Sing. and in Infinitive.

|          |                             |                                                                  |
|----------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A. Pudet | = it shames (me, you, etc.) | } Acc. of Person.<br>} Genit. or } of the<br>} Infinit. } Cause. |
| Paenitet | = it repents                |                                                                  |
| Taedet   | = it wearies                |                                                                  |
| Piget    | = it vexes                  |                                                                  |
| Miseret  | = it moves (my) pity        |                                                                  |

Ex.—*I am ashamed of my crime* = *pudet me facinoris.*  
*They repent of having done it* = *pudet eos hoc fecisse.*

- B. Oportet = it behoves (ought) : Acc. and Infin.

*I ought to go* = *oportet me ire.*  
*You ought to have gone* = *oportuit te ire.*

- C. Licet = it is lawful, it is allowed : Dat. and Infin.

*We may go (i.e. it is lawful for us)* = *licet nobis ire.*  
*You might have gone (i.e. it was lawful)* = *licuit tibi ire.*

- D. Interest and Refert = it is of importance, it concerns.

The Person or Thing concerned is denoted thus :

1st and 2nd Pers. : Fem. Abl. of *meus, tuus, noster, vester.*  
 3rd Person : Genitive of Noun or Pronoun.

*It is important for me, you, etc.* = *mea (tua) interest.*

*It concerns him (Caesar, etc.)* = *ejus (Caesaris) interest.*

That which is important is denoted by

Infin., Acc. + Infin., or ut + Subjunct.

*It is highly important that you should be present.*

*Multum interest te adesse (or ut adsis).*

N.B.—Impersonal Verbs may be used in any Tense or Mood :

e.g. *Do not repent* = *ne te paeniteat.*

*He said he repented* = *dixit se paenitere.*

§ 31. Some Verbs are used Impersonally as well as Personally.

e.g. *accidit, it happens*; *apparet, it is evident*, etc.

The construction of these is given in the Vocabulary.

§ 32. Intransitive Verbs are used in Passive Impersonally.

*Pugnatum est = it was fought = there was fighting.*

MAY, MIGHT, SHOULD, ETC.

§ 33. (a) **May and Might.**

i. Auxiliary: *may*, Present Subj.; *might*, Imperf. Subj.

(a) In Final Clauses.

*We come that we may see* = *vēnimus ut videamus*. § 78.

*We came that we might see* = *vēnimus ut videremus*.

(b) In expressions of Wish.

*May I die* = *moriar*.

ii. Permissive.

*You may go* (i.e. *you are permitted*) = *licet tibi ire*. § 30.

*You might have gone* = *licuit tibi ire*.

(*Observe tense.*)

iii. Possibility.

*He may come* (possibly) = *fieri potest ut veniat*. § 66.

*He might have come* = *venire poterat* (potuit).

(b) **Should.**

i. Auxiliary: Imperf. Subj. or Infin.

*He advised that they should return* = *monuit ut redirent*. § 73.

*It is fair that they should stay* = *aequum est eos manere*.

ii. *should* = *ought to*.

*You should go* = { *te ire oportet* (§ 30); *tibi eundum est* (§ 27); *ire debes*.

*You should have gone* = { *te ire oportuit*; *tibi eundum erat*; *ire debuisti*. (*Observe tense.*)

(c) **Would.**

i. Auxiliary: Imperf. Subj. (Ind. Comm.), or Fut. Infin. (Ind. Stat.).

*He begged that we would go* = *oravit ut iremus*. § 73.

*He said he would come* = *dixit se venturum esse*. § 63.

ii. = *was willing*.

*He would not go away* = *noluit abire*.

(d) **Must.**

*You must go* = *tibi eundum est* (§ 27); *or tibi ire necesse est*.

(e) **Ought.**

*You ought to go* = { *te ire oportet* (§ 30); *tibi eundum est* (§ 27); *ire debes*.

*You ought to have gone* = { *te ire oportuit*; *tibi eundum erat* (fuit); *ire debuisti*.

## TIME.

§ 34. Time 'when,' i.e. *at, in, or on* : **Ablative.**

*at the third hour* = *tertiā horā*; *in winter* = *hieme*; *on the next day* = *postero die*.

Time 'within which,' i.e. *in or within* : **Ablative.**

*in or within a few days* = *paucis diebus*.

**How long before or after.**

**Abl.** with Post or Ante as **Adverbs.**

Post or Ante as **Prepositions with Acc.**

i. Where the event from which time is reckoned is **not** mentioned :

*He returned a few days after (before).* Adverb.

*Paucis post (ante) diebus rediit.*

*He returned after (before) a few days.* Preposit.

*Post (ante) paucos dies rediit.*

## Where the event from which time is reckoned is mentioned :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{A few years} \\ \text{before (after)} \\ \text{his coming} \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{paucis ante (post) annis quam venit.} \\ \text{ante (post) paucos annos quam venit.} \\ \text{paucis annis ante (post) ejus adventum.} \end{array} \right.$ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**How long ago** : **Acc.** with *abhinc*.

*ten years ago* = *abhinc decem annos*.

**How long, i.e. during or for a time** : **Accusative.**

*He dwelt there for ten years* : *decem annos ibi habitabat*.

N.B.—i. *per* is sometimes used :

*through ten whole days* = *per decem dies*.

## ii. Observe the tense idiom :

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{I have been } \} \text{ waiting} \\ \text{I had been } \} \text{ three hours} \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{exspecto} \\ \text{exspectabam} \end{array} \right\} \text{ jam tres horas, or} \\ \text{tertiam jam horam.}$ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## SPACE.

§ 35. **How far** : **Accusative.**

*He advanced three miles* = *tria milia passuum progressus est*

**How far off** : **Accus.** or **Ablat.**

*They were three miles off* =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tria milia (or tribus milibus)} \\ \text{passuum aberant.} \end{array} \right.$

**Measurement** : **Accusative (or Genitive).**

Acc. *Walls 200 feet high* : *ducenos pedes alti*.

Gen. *A 10-foot ditch* : *fossa decem pedum*.

## PLACE.

§ 36. **Where**, i.e. *in* a place, **in** + **Abl.** ; *at* a place, **ad** + **Acc.**

*in the city* = in urbe.      *in Spain* = in Hispania.  
*at the river* = ad flumen.    *at his feet* = ad pedes ejus.

**Omit the Preposition** before the following words :

i. *at home* = domi ; *at your house* = domi tuæ ; *at Caesar's* = domi Caesaris (or apud Caesarem) ; *in the country* = ruri ; and usually before 'locus' with Adj. ; *on level ground* = aequo loco : so 'medius' and 'totus' ; *in the whole of Italy* = totā Italiā.

ii. Names of Towns and small Islands : omit Preposition and use Locative, i.e. Genit. of 1st and 2nd Decl. Sing., Abl. of 3rd Decl., and all Plurals.

Locatives of Roma, Corinthus, Neapolis, Athenae, Gabii, Gades :

| DECL. | SING.             | PLUR.            |
|-------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1st   | -ae (Romae).      | -is (Athenis).   |
| 2nd   | -i (Corinthi).    | -is (Gabiis).    |
| 3rd   | -i, -e (Neapoli). | -ibus (Gadibus). |

**Caution.**—i. Preposition is used with 'urbs' or 'oppidum' in Apposition.

*In the famous city of Naples* = Neapoli, in urbe celeberrima.

ii. *He sent to his brother at Rome* = Romam ad fratrem misit : here Rome denotes place 'whither,' not 'where.' See below.

**Whither**, i.e. *to* a place : **in** or **ad** + **Acc.**

*to the city* = ad urbem ; *into Asia* = in Asiam.

**Omit Preposition** before Names of Towns, small Islands, 'domum,' and 'rus.'

*go to Rome* = ire Romam ; *go home* = ire domum.

**Caution.**—The Preposition is used with 'urbs,' etc., in Apposition.

*To the famous town of Naples.*

Neapolim ad urbem celeberrimam.

**Whence**, i.e. *from* a place : **ab**, **de**, **ex** + **Abl.**

*from the city* = ex urbe.

N.B.—The Preposition is sometimes omitted after verbs denoting 'separation' : see 'From.'

**Omit Preposition** before Names of Towns, small Islands, 'domo,' and 'rure.'

*start from Rome* = Romā proficisci.

**Caution.**—*From the famous city of Naples* = Neapoli, ex urbe, etc.

## AT.

## § 37. Place : see Rules for Place, § 36.

*at* = in the direction of; **in** + **Acc.**: *throw stones at them* = saxa in eos conjicere.

## Time : see Rules for Time, § 34.

N.B.—*at the appointed time* = ad tempus.  
*at the age of ten* = decem annos natus.

## Value and Price.

*value at a . . .* : Genit. magni, parvi, maximi, etc.  
*buy, sell at a . . .* : Abl. parvo, magno, maximo, etc.

N.B.—*tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, either of Value or Price.

## Manner and Circumstance.

**Ablative** + **Adjective**. *at full speed* = summa celeritate.  
*at one blow* = uno ictu. *at his own expense* = sumptu suo.  
*at my bidding* = meo jussu. *at your risk* = tuo periculo.

## Cause.

**Ablative**. *rejoice at* = gaudere, laetari + Abl.  
*grieve at* = dolere + Abl. (or Acc.).

## Adverb Phrases.

*at once*, i.e. *immediately*: statim, or extemplo.  
*at once*, i.e. *both together*: simul.  
*at last, tandem*; *at least, saltem, certe*.

## Included in Lat. Verb.

*aim-at* = peto. *laugh-at* = irrideo. *look-at* = specto.  
*be-present-at* = intersum (Dât.). *grieve-at* = doleo (Acc. or Abl.).

## BY.

## § 38. Agent, i.e. by a Person : a (ab) + Ablative.

*sent by the king* = a rege missus.

N.B.—Where a Person is regarded as an Instrument 'per' is used.

*He learnt by his spies* = per exploratores.

'Per' is also used in adjurations: *I pray you by the Gods* = per deos.

## Instrument, i.e. by means of a thing : Ablative.

*pierced by a dart* = telo transfixus.

## Cause : Ablative.

*to perish by hunger, disease, etc.* = fame, morbo perire.



**Measure of Difference : Ablative.**

*larger by half* = dimidio major; *easier by far* = multo facilius.

**Manner : Ablative.**

*by this means* = hoc modo; *by my influence* = auctoritate mea.  
*by force* = vi (or per vim); *by treachery* = fraude; *by accident* = casu.  
 Abl. of Gerund or Gerundive : *by teaching* = docendo.

**Circumstance : Ablative.**

*by your command* = jussu tuo; *by your leave* = pace tua.

**Place and Time : Ablative.**

*by land and sea* = terra marique; *by all the roads* = omnibus viis.  
*by night and day* = nocte dieque.  
*by* (= near), *juxta*, or *ad*; *by the fire* = juxta focum.

## FOR.

## § 39. Dative of Advantage.

*easy for you* = facilis tibi; *it is lawful for me* = licet mihi.  
 to choose a place *for-the-camp* = castris.  
 to have leisure *for* = vacare (Dat.).

N.B.—But *ad* + Acc. is usual after *aptus* = fit, *idoneus* = suitable,  
*paratus* = ready : *ready for war* = paratus ad bellum.

= for the purpose of —ing : *ad* + Gerund or Gerundive  
 (§§ 25, 26).

to take a day *for considering* = ad deliberandum.

= on behalf of or instead of : *pro* + Abl.

to die *for one's country* = pro patria; I will go *for you* = pro te.

= in exchange for : Ablat. of Price (except *quanti*,  
*tanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*).

He sold his country *for gold* = auro.

*For how much did you buy it?* = quanti emisti?

= for the sake of : *causā* or *gratiā* + Genit. of Noun,  
 or *meā*, *tuā*, etc.

*for my sake* = meā causā.

*for the sake of the state* = reipublicae causa.

= considering : *pro* + Abl.

Their lands are small *for their population* = pro multitudine.

= on account of : ob (Acc.), propter (Acc.), or de (Abl.)  
*for these reasons* = ob (propter) has causas or his de causis.

= prevented by : prae + Abl.

*I cannot speak for tears* = prae lacrimis.

= of : Genitive.

*desire for praise* = cupido laudis ; *signal for battle* = proelii signum.

Place : *to start for, to set out for a place* : 'for' = 'to.'  
 See Rules for Place, § 36.

Time : 'for' denoting Duration of Time. Accus.

*for three hours* = tres horas. See Time, § 34.

Included in Latin Verb.

*wait for* = exspecto ; *ask for* = rogo ; *hope for* = spero, etc.

§ 40. 'For' frequently introduces an English Infinitive Phrase which must be rendered in Latin by a Substantival or Adverbial Clause : e.g.,

*It is better for our city to be burnt* = *that it should be burnt.*

Substantival.

(a) Accus. and Infin.

*They consider it disgraceful for a son to stand-by.*

Filium assistere, turpe ducunt.

*They think it creditable for the land to be vacant.*

Maximam putant esse laudem, vacare agros.

*It is necessary for the mortal body to perish.*

Corpus mortale perire necesse est.

So with many impersonal expressions : as, melius est, tempus est, utile est, etc. But

*It is lawful for you to go* = licet tibi ire. § 30.

(b) Ut + Subj. See § 66.

*It is impossible for me to go* = fieri non potest ut eam.

*It remains for me to explain* = restat ut doceam.

*It is important for me to see you* = mea interest, ut te videam.

So with many impersonal expressions : as, consuetudo est, jus est, etc.

(c) Sometimes the Clause may be avoided.

*It is vain for you to deny* = frustra negas.

*It is impossible for him to come* = venire non potest.

*It is usual for them to travel* = solent iter facere.

**Adverbial.**

**Consecutive.**—*The work is too difficult for me to undertake.*  
Opus difficilium quam quod (or ut) suscipiam.  
§ 83, g.

**Causal.**—*He blamed them for not sending help.* § 87.  
Incusavit quod auxilium non misissent.

**Temporal.**—*He was waiting for the ships to assemble.*  
Expectabat dum naves convenirent. § 91, B.

**FROM.**

§ 41. **Place** : motion from a place : **ab, ex, or de + Abl.**  
*to start from the city = ab urbe proficisci.*

N.B.—Omit Preposition before names of towns. See § 36.

**Separation.**

i. Many verbs meaning *to abstain, withdraw, remove, exclude*, etc., are followed by an Abl. either with or without a **Preposition**: thus *excedere proelio* or *ex proelio*. Such verbs are:

|          |         |         |          |
|----------|---------|---------|----------|
| abesse   | cedo *  | excludo | pello *  |
| abstineo | desisto | libero  | prohibeo |
| arceo    | evado   | moveo * | tempero  |

(\* and their Compounds with ex-, de-.)

N.B.—Omit Preposition after *vaco = be free from*, and *absolvo*.  
Insert Preposition after Compounds of *dis-*, *se-*, and *re-*.

ii. The Adjectives *liber, alienus, immunis, purus*, etc., are also used with and without a Preposition: *liber (a) cura = free from care*.

iii. Some Verbs meaning *to take from*, such as *adimo, detraho, eripio, extorqueo*, etc., often have a Dative of the Person deprived; otherwise usually Prepos. + Abl.

*He took my hope from me = spem mihi ademit.*

but *to rescue from danger = ex periculo eripere.*

iv. 'From' after a Verb of 'hindering,' *quin* or *quominus*. See § 119.

**Origin** : Participles denoting birth and descent, as *natus, ortus, genitus*, are usually followed by Abl. **without Preposition.**

*sprung from a noble race = nobili genere ortus.*

**Cause or Motive : Simple Abl. or ob or propter + Acc**  
*to die from disease* = morbo interire ; *from fear* = propter metum

**Time : Preposit. + Abl.**

*from the third hour* = ab hora tertia.  
*from day to day* = de die in diem.  
*from boyhood* = a puero.

IN.

§ 42. **Place. i. Literal : in + Abl. : in the city** = in urbe.

N.B.—Use Locative of Towns. See 'Place,' § 36.

Caution.—Engl. 'in' sometimes = 'into' = Lat. in + Acc.  
*send in all directions* = in omnes partes.

**ii. Metaphorical : in + Abl.**

*to have in mind, i.e. to intend* = in animo habere.  
*to be in his power* = in potestate ejus esse.

N.B.—The Preposition is sometimes omitted : e.g. *to bear in mind* = memoria tenere ; *in place of* (i.e. instead of) *a parent* = loco parentis.

**Time : Ablative.** See Rules for Time, § 34.

N.B.—*He wrote in his old age* = senex scripsit ; so puer, consul, etc.  
 Similarly, *in his lifetime* = vivus.

**Manner : Ablative.**

*In this manner* = hoc modo (or in hunc modum) ; *in order* = ordine ;  
*to fight, to conquer, in battle, war* = proelio, acie, bello, dimicare,  
 superare ; *in their fashion* = more suo ; *in silence* = silentio ; or,  
 By an Adj. : *they stood in silence* = taciti stabant ; *they returned in safety* = incolumes redierunt.

**Respect : Ablative.**

i. *In appearance* = specie ; *in reality* = re vera ; *in name* = nomine ;  
*few in number* = pauci numero ; *excel in valour* = virtute superare ;  
*in my opinion* = mea sententia, meo judicio (or Abl. abs. me judice).

N.B.—*Skilled in war* = peritus belli (Genit.).

ii. *Abound in* = abundare + Abl. ; *rich in* = dives + Abl. or Genit. ;  
*fertile in* = fertilis + Abl. or Genit.

**Cause : Ablative.**

*rejoice in* = gaudere, laetari + Abl.  
*trust in* = fidere, confidere + Abl. or Dat.

INSTEAD OF, ETC.

§ 43. (a) 'Instead of' followed by a Noun : Pro + Abl.

*They use pieces of iron instead of coin.*  
Utuntur taleis ferreis pro nummo.

[N.B. 'Loco,' Abl. of locus, is used Adverbially in certain phrases, generally without 'in.' Thus: loco parentis esse = to act instead of a parent, i.e. to take the place of a parent.]

(b) 'Instead of' followed by a Verbal Noun in -ing may be expressed in various ways, thus :

*Instead of blaming he praised us.*

- i. Non modo non culpavit, sed etiam laudavit.
- ii. Adeo non culpavit, ut laudaret. Consec.
- iii. Tantum abfuit ut culparet, ut laudaret. Consec.
- iv. Quum posset culpare, laudavit.

(c) 'In spite of' may be usually expressed by a Concessive Clause.

*in spite of his courage = though he was very brave.*

OF.

§ 44. I. Of = Latin Genitive.

1. Possessive : of = belonging to.

*the son of the king = filius regis.*

N.B. i. *It is the (mark) of a wise man = est sapientis (omitting 'mark').*

*So, it is (the duty, part, business, etc.) of a good citizen.*

ii. Eng. 'of' = Latin Dative after auxilio, praesidio, subsidio. (See § 11.)

*send to the help of Caesar = auxilio Caesari.*

2. Partitive.

*many of the citizens = multi civium.*  
*bravest of all = fortissimus omnium.*

N.B. i. Instead of Gen. ex + Abl. may be used, especially with Numbers.

*one of the three = unus e tribus.*

ii. Use nostrum, vestrum (not nostri) as Partitive Genitives.

iii. *Uterque* = *each of two*, is used with Genit. of Pronouns, but in agreement with Nouns: *each of us* = *uterque nostrum*, but *each of the consuls* = *uterque consul*.

iv. **Caution.**—*All of* is not really Partitive: *all of us* = *nos omnes*. So often with *many*, *few*, and *numbers*, where the whole is included; e.g. *There were ten of us* = *we were ten*.

### 3. Definition: of = 'consisting of,' or 'containing.'

*a crowd of citizens* = *multitudo civium*.

*shower of stones* = *lapidum imber*.

N.B.—But i. *City of Rome* = *urbs Roma* (Apposition).

ii. *Cups of gold* = *pocula ex auro, or, pocula aurea*.

### 4. Quality or Description: always with Epithet.

*a man of great ability* = *vir summi ingenii (or summo ingenio)*.

N.B.—Use Genitive for *measurements*: *as, fossa centum pedum*; *requirements, res magni laboris*; *class, as, homo infimi generis*.

Use Ablative for *bodily description*: *as, humili statura*, and *temporary condition, as, to be of good courage* = *esse bono animo*.

### 5. Objective.

With Nouns and Adjectives denoting *desire, fear, knowledge, ignorance, etc.*: *hope of safety* = *spes salutis*; *fear of death* = *timor mortis*; *greedy of gain* = *avidus lucri*.

N.B.—The Genitives *mei, nostri, etc.*, are used Objectively: *love of us* = *amor nostri*.

### 6. Genitive with Verbs.

*repent, paenitet, be ashamed, pudet*, with Gen. of Thing, § 30. *accuse, accusare, convict, convincere, acquit, absolvere*, Genit. or *de* + Abl. of Thing., Acc. of Person.

*be in want, indigeo* (Genit. or Abl.), *egeo* (Abl. or Genit.).

## § 45. II. 'Of' not = Latin Genitive.

N.B. *To the help of*, § 44, 1, ii.; *all of*, 2, iv.; *city of*, 3, i.

(a) *Top, middle, and bottom of*.

*Summus, medius, imus, totus*, are used in agreement.

*The top of the hill* = *summus mons*; *the whole of Italy* = *tota Italia*.

(b) *Of* = *about* or *concerning* = *de* + Abl.

*To speak of* = *loqui de*; *so, hear of, inform of*.

(c) 'Of' denoting *Cause* and *Origin*: **Ablative**.

*Die of hunger, fame perire*; *born of a goddess* = *dea natus*.

- (d) *Worthy of* = dignus (Abl.); bereft of = orbus (Abl.);  
*empty of* = vacuus, *bare of* = nudus (Abl. or  
 ab + Abl.); *full of* = plenus (Abl. or Gen.).

Verbs of—

- (e) *Wanting* : Ablative of Thing wanted.

So careo, vaco (*be free of*), opus est (*need of*), egeo (also Genit.).

- (f) *Depriving* : Acc. of Person, Abl. of Thing taken.

So privo, spolio, nudo, fraudo, exuo.

- (g) *Asking* : Acc. of Thing asked for ; Person of whom asked may be

- i. ab + Abl. So peto, quaero, postulo.  
 ii. Acc. So rogo, oro, posco,\* flagito.\*

\* Admit either construction.

- (h) Various :

*Be at the head of* = praesum, Dat.

*Consist of* = consto, ex + Abl.

*Get possession of* = potior, Abl. or Genit.

*What will become of*, quid fiet, Dat. or Abl.

*Deserve well of* = bene mereo de + Abl.

## ON.

### § 46. Position on or upon : in + Abl.

*to stand on a wall* = in muro consistere ; *ride* = in equo vehi.

But *on the ground* = humi ; *on the right* = dextra or a dextra ; *on the left* = (a) sinistra.

*on one side* = ex altera parte ; *on all sides* = undique (Adv.)

*to fight on horseback* = pugnare ex equo : *on foot* = pedibus.

*safety depended on valour* = salus in virtute posita est.

**Direction on = on to : in + Acc.**

*make a charge on the enemy* : impetum in hostes facere.

- i. But Verbs compounded with in (impono, imprimo, infero, injicio), are generally constructed with Acc. and Dative.

*make* } *war on the enemy* { inferre } bellum hostibus.  
*declare* } { indicere }

*lay hands on anyone* = injicere manus alicui.

N.B.—In + Acc. is also sometimes used of literal movement  
 'on to' : *put men on board* = milites in naves imponere.

- ii. *relying on* = fretus, Abl. : *rely on* = confidere, Abl. Thing, Dat. Pers.

*inflict punishment on* = supplicium sumere de (Abl.) ; *eed on, vesci*, Abl.

**Time.**

*on the next day* = postero die. Abl. of Time When, see § 34.  
*on* = after; *on hearing this*, his auditis, or postquam audivit.

**On account of.**

Propter or Ob + Acc. : *on account of this* = propter hoc; ob hanc causam.

*on account of* = for the sake of, gratiā or causā (placed last).  
*on your account* = tua causa, *on Caesar's account* = Caesaris gratia.

*on purpose* = de industria; *on the other hand* = contra.

**To.****§ 47. Motion towards : in or ad + Acc.**

*to go to a place* = ire ad locum.

N.B.—Omit Preposition with names of towns. See § 36.

**Without motion towards : Dative.**

*I give a book to you* = do tibi librum.

So with such Verbs as *tell, show, declare, reply, etc.* ;  
 and such Adjectives as, *friendly, near, pleasing, etc.*

*Exceptions* : ad. Compounds of ad (addere, adicere, adjungere, applicare se) are often followed by ad + Acc. : so, applico me ad virtutem.

But adjacēre, assidere, adstare always with Dative.

ad is used with pertinet and attinet, *it belongs*.

*to the number of 200* = ad ducentos.

cum : conferre, comparare, componere (= to compare) usually take 'cum': *to compare this man to that*, hunc cum illo conferre; so, communicare cum = to communicate to.

**Genitive** : *condemn to death* = damnare capitis (or Abl.)

*it is the interest of all* = omnium interest (but see § 30, D).

*unaccustomed to war* = insuetus belli.

**Ablative** : *accustomed to labour* = assuetus labore.

*to* = than, *superior to* = better than.



## WITH.

§ 48. With = 'together with,' 'in company with': cum + Abl.

*He came with his brother* = cum fratre venit.

N.B.—Cum, usually of Persons, but sometimes of Things forming an accompaniment: complures cum telis, *several men with weapons*; but 'telis armati' would be safer.

With not meaning 'together with.'

**Ablat. Instrument and Means:** *strike with an axe* = securi percutere; *clothed with skins* = pellibus vestitus; *fill with wine* = vino complere.

„ **Cause:** *burn with zeal* = studio ardere; *moved with wrath* = ira commotus; *content with a little* = parvo contentus.

„ **Quality and Description:** *with bare head* = nudo capite; *with outstretched hands* = passis manibus.

„ **Manner (with Adjective):**

*with no trouble* = nullo negotio; *with calmness* = aequo animo.

*with this purpose* = hoc consilio; *with your leave* = bona tua venia.

N.B.—Cum is sometimes used with Ablatives which might be classed as Abl. of Manner: thus, magno dolore, cum dolore, or cum magno dolore [*but not dolore alone*]. Cum is, however, not used with 'nullo negotio' and some other phrases, and, as it is not always easy to distinguish Abl. of Manner from that of Cause, it is safer not to use 'cum' in doubtful phrases, but to add an epithet if necessary.

**Dative.**

*be angry with*, irasci or succensere (Dat.).

*agree with*, assentiri (Dat.); consentire, cum + Abl. or Dat.

*compare with*, conferre, comparare, componere: i. cum + Abl., or ii. Dat.

*threaten with*: *I threaten you with death.*

= mortem tibi minor = *I threaten death to you.*

*surround with* } *surround a city with walls*: (i.) urbem circumdare muris (Abl.);

*present with* } or (ii.) muros circumdare urbi (Dat.): the same double construction may be used with donare = *present*, induere = *clothe*, and some other Verbs.

*Charge with* = accuse of, Genit., or Causal Cl. § 87 b, § 124.

## WITHOUT.

§ 49. 'Without' followed by a Noun is usually translated by a Preposition.

sine : *without danger* = sine periculo ; *without cause*, sine causa.

extra : *without (i.e. outside) the walls* = extra muros.

'Without' followed by a Verbal Noun in -ing must be expressed by (1) a Participial Phrase, by (2) a Coordinate Sentence, or by (3) an Adverbial Clause : thus,

1. *I did it without being aware* = imprudens feci.  
*They offer help without being asked* = non rogati.  
*He returned without having succeeded* = re infecta rediit.  
*He brought the ships to land without losing any*  
 = ne unā quidem amissā.
2. *They put them to flight, without being able to pursue them.*  
 Eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt.  
*They approached Britain without seeing any enemy.*  
 Accessum est ad Brit. neque in eo loco hostis est visus.
3. *You cannot praise these without blaming those.*  
 Non potes hos laudare ut illos non culpes. § 81.  
*I never let a day pass without writing.*  
 Nullum intermisi diem, quin scriberem. § 118.  
*We do not wish to live without enjoying life.*  
 Nolumus ita vivere ut vita non fruamur. § 81.  
*They said they would not return without taking the city.*  
 Negabant se { nisi capta urbe or } redituros esse.  
 { nisi urbem cepissent }

## SOME AND ANY.

§ 50. Any.

quīs, qua, quid (Subst.) } = any { after num, ne, si, nisi, quo, and  
 qui, quae, quod (Adj.) } { often in Relative Clauses.

N.B.—Quis (qui) never stands first in a sentence.

*Does anyone think?* = Num quis putat?

*If anyone thinks* = Si quis putat.

*Let not anyone think* = Ne quis putet.

quisquam, quidquam } = any (at all) { after Negatives or Virtual  
(Subst.)<sup>1</sup> } Negatives, as vix, sine,  
nullus, -a, -um (Adj.) } and Comparatives.

*He never hurts anyone* = nunquam nocet cuiquam.

*Without any help* = sine ullo auxilio.

N.B.—Quisquam (ullus) may be used like quis after num, etc. (not quo), but with more emphatic force.

Num quisquam putat = *does anyone at all think?*

Quamdiu quisquam erit = *as long as there is anyone at all.*

Quivis, quaevis, quidvis, or quilibet, etc. = *any you please.*

*It may happen to anyone* = cuivis accidere potest.

Observe the use of the Partitive Genitive after quid, quidquam, etc., Nom. or Acc.

*nothing human or divine* = nec divini quidquam nec humani. § 13.

### § 51. Some.

Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (Subst.) } = some.  
Aliqui, aliqua, aliquod (Adj.) }

*suppose somebody said* = dicat hoc aliquis.

*not without some labour* = non sine aliquo labore.

Nescio-quis, -qua, -quid = *somebody or other* (I don't know who).

Nonnullus, -a, -um = { *some at any rate, some few* (i.e. no  
quite none).

*embassies sent by some states* } = a nonnullis civitatibus.  
(*though not by all*)

Sunt qui = *there are some who* (Subjunct.). See § 114.

Alii . . . alii = *some . . . others.*

Observe the use of the Partitive Genitive after aliquid, nescio quid, Nom. or Acc.

*some money* = aliquid pecuniae. § 13.

### SELF. (SE AND IPSE.)

### § 52. Se is a Substantival (Reflexive) Pronoun of 3rd Person, Oblique Cases only.

se = { *himself, herself, itself, themselves* } referring to the  
{ *or simply him, her, it, them* } Subject.

*They defend themselves* = se defendunt.

*They took their wives with them* = secum.

For the use of se in Subordinate Clauses, see § 131.

<sup>1</sup> Quisquam is not used in the Plural and in the Fem. forms of Nom., Acc., and Abl. The want of these forms is supplied by ullus used Substantivally.

**Iipse** is a **Definitive Adjective** agreeing with a **Noun** or **Pronoun**.

i. *Iipse* may be in any case.

*I saw the king himself* = regem ipsum vidi.  
*Of the king himself* = regis ipsius.

ii. *Iipse* may agree with the **Pronoun** contained in the **Verb**.

*He came himself* = ipse venit.

iii. *Iipse* may be of 1st, 2nd, or 3rd Person.

*I did it myself* = ipse feci ; *you did it yourself* = ipse fecisti.

**Se** and **Iipse** compared.

*The queen came herself* = regina ipsa venit.  
*The queen hid herself* = regina se celavit.

### HIS, ETC. (SUUS AND EJUS).

#### § 53.

**Suus** = *his, her, its, their* { *i.e.* belonging to the person denoted by  
the Subject.

**Ejus** = *his, her, its* { *i.e.* belonging to some other person  
**Eorum, earum** = *their* { than that denoted by the Subject.

*Caesar praised his men* = C. milites suos laudavit.  
*We praised his men* = milites ejus laudavimus.

N.B.—**Suus**, -a, -um agrees in **Gender**, **Number**, and **Case**, *not* with the **Subject**, but with the **Noun** denoting the thing possessed.

*The son loves his mother* = filius matrem suam amat.  
*The mother loves her sons* = mater filios suos amat.

For the use of **suus** in **Subordinate Clauses** see § 131.

### NEGATIVES.

#### § 54. **Non** is the **Negative of Fact**.

**Ne** ,, ,, *Purpose, Wish, etc.*

Hence, **Non** is used in **Statements**, **Ne** in **Commands** and *expressions of Wish, Purpose, etc.*

A second **Command**, if **negative**, is introduced by **neu** or **neve**.

**Nemo** = *no one*, supplies its **Gen.** and **Abl.** from **nullus**, *i.e.* **Gen.** nullius, **Abl.** nullo.

**Nemo** is generally used instead of **Nullus** in such phrases as  
*No Roman* = nemo Romanus, where **Romanus** is itself  
an **Adj.** used **Substantivally**.

**Ne . . . quidem** = *not even*, the emphatic word being placed between.

ne Hercules quidem = *not even Hercules*.

**Double Negatives.** Two negatives cancel each other : thus,

non nemo = *some one*.          nemo non = *everyone*.  
nonnunquam = *sometimes*.      nunquam non = *always*.

[But not when a general negation (*a*) is followed by ne . . . quidem emphasising a particular word, or (*b*) is distributed by nec . . . nec : thus,

Nemo unquam neque poeta neque orator fuit.]

**Nego** instead of dico . . . non. See § 65, *e*.

### § 55. Connection of Co-ordinate Sentences (Negative) :

|                     |                  |                    |
|---------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| <i>and not</i>      | = neque (or nec) | instead of et non. |
| <i>and nobody</i>   | = neque quisquam | „ et nemo.         |
| <i>and nothing</i>  | = neque quidquam | „ et nihil.        |
| <i>and no . . .</i> | = neque ullus    | „ et nullus.       |
| <i>and never</i>    | = neque unquam   | „ et nunquam.      |
| <i>for not</i>      | = neque enim     | „ non enim.        |
| <i>yet not</i>      | = neque tamen    | „ non tamen.       |

N.B.—But in Indirect Commands and Final Clauses a second Clause, if negative, is introduced by *neu* or *neve* instead of *et ne*. § 75, *d*.

## COMMANDS (DIRECT).

### § 56. I. Positive Commands.

|              |                         |                         |
|--------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 2. <i>Come (thou)</i>   | = veni, Imperative.     |
|              | 3. <i>Let him come</i>  | = veniat, Pres. Subj.   |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. <i>Let us come</i>   | = veniamus, Pres. Subj. |
|              | 2. <i>Come ye</i>       | = venite, Imperative.   |
|              | 3. <i>Let them come</i> | = veniant, Pres. Subj.  |

N.B.—A command may also be expressed less abruptly thus :

|                |   |                                 |
|----------------|---|---------------------------------|
| velim venias   | } | = <i>I wish you would come.</i> |
| fac venias     |   |                                 |
| cura ut venias |   |                                 |

## § 57. II. Negative Commands or Prohibitions.

|                                   |                |             |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|-------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 2. Do not stay :     | ne manseris,   | Perf. Subj. |
| 3. Let him not stay :             | ne maneas,     | Pres. „     |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. Let us not stay : | ne maneamus,   | Pres. „     |
| 2. Do not stay :                  | ne manseritis, | Perf. „     |
| 3. Let them not stay :            | ne maneant,    | Pres. „     |

N.B.—Negative Commands may be also expressed by the Imperative of *Nolo* followed by an Infinitive.

*Do not remain* = *noli manere* (s.), or *nolite manere* (pl.).

## QUESTIONS (DIRECT).

## § 58. I. Introduced by Interrogative Pronouns, Adjectives, or Adverbs.

*Who did it?* = *quis fecit?*    *Whence come you?* = *unde venis?*  
*What war have you waged?* = *quod bellum gessisti?*

§ 59. II. Questions not introduced (in English) by any Interrogative word.  
One of the following Interrogative Particles is used in Latin.

|                                |                      |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| -ne affixed to the first word, | Answer doubtful.     |
| nonne,                         | suggests Ans. 'Yes.' |
| num,                           | suggests Ans. 'No.'  |

*Did you see?* *vidisti-ne?*

*Did you not see?* *nonne vidisti?* = *surely you did see.*

*Do you dare?* *num audes?* = *surely you dont dare.*

N.B.—*-ne* introduces a real question, asked for information. *Nonne* and *num* introduce statements, thrown into the form of a question, suggesting, but *not expecting*, an answer.

## § 60. III. Alternative Questions are introduced in Latin by

*utrum . . . an (or).*

*-ne . . . . an (or).*

Are ye friends or foes? =  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{utrum amici estis an hostes?} \\ \textit{amici-ne estis an hostes?} \end{array} \right.$

N.B.— i. The first particle, *utrum* or *-ne*, is often omitted.

ii. *Num* (suggesting a negative answer) sometimes stands for *utrum*.

iii. 'or not' = *annon*.

iv. **Caution.**—Distinguish *or* in questions from *or* in statements.

*Ye are either friends or foes* = *aut amici estis aut hostes*.

# APPENDIX II.

## THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

### S C H E M E

Dependent (or Subordinate) Clauses are of three kinds, viz. :—

I. **SUBSTANTIVAL**, *i.e.* standing as subject or object (like a Noun).

II. **ADVERBIAL**, *i.e.* qualifying a Verb, Adj., or Adverb.

III. **ADJECTIVAL**, *i.e.* qualifying a Noun.

They are subdivided as follows :—

|                                                                  | SECTION |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| I. <b>SUBSTANTIVAL.</b>                                          |         |
| (i) Indirect Statement . . . . .                                 | 61      |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'Brutus hath told you (that) Caesar was ambitious.'   |         |
| (ii) Indirect Question . . . . .                                 | 68      |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'I have forgot why I did call thee back.'             |         |
| (iii) Indirect Command . . . . .                                 | 73      |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'He commanded that it should be done.'                |         |
| II. <b>ADVERBIAL.</b>                                            |         |
| (i) Final (Purpose) . . . . .                                    | 77      |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'Spare me a little, that I may recover my strength.'  |         |
| (ii) Consecutive (Consequence) . . . . .                         | 81      |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'I am so feeble that I cannot speak.'                 |         |
| (iii) Causal . . . . .                                           | 85      |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'Then are they glad, because they are at rest.'       |         |
| (iv) Temporal (Time) . . . . .                                   | 89      |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'When clouds are seen, wise men put on their cloaks.' |         |
| (v) Conditional . . . . .                                        | 92      |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'If ye have tears, prepare to shed them now.'         |         |
| (vi) Concessive . . . . .                                        | 97      |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'Angels are bright still, though the greatest fell.'  |         |
| (vii) Comparative (Manner or Degree) . . . . .                   | 100     |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'As the tree falls, so shall it lie.'                 |         |
| (viii) Local (Place) . . . . .                                   | 109     |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'Fools rush in where angels fear to tread.'           |         |
| III. <b>ADJECTIVAL</b> . . . . .                                 | 105     |
| <i>Ex.</i> 'Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.'            |         |

## SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

## § 61. I. INDIRECT STATEMENT.

*i.e.* A Clause introduced by 'that' (often omitted) and standing as

(i) Object to verbs such as 'say,' 'know,' 'think,' 'believe,' 'see,' etc.

*We know (that he has come).*

(ii) Subject to such phrases as 'it is agreed,' 'it is well known.'

*It is certain (that he has come).*

(iii.) In Apposition to pronouns 'this,' 'that,' or to nouns such as 'rumour.'

*This we know, (that he has come).*

## § 62. Construction in Latin.

The Subject of the Clause is in the **Accusative**.

The Verb                   "                   "                   "                   **Infinitive**.

'That' is not translated.

*We know (that he has come) = scimus (eum venisse).*

## § 63. Tense of the Infinitive.

When the Principal Verb is **Primary** (*i.e. Pres., Fut., Perf., or Fut. Perf.*), the tense of the Infin. follows the English.

|                            |                          |                                                        |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>he says</i> (dicit)     | } <i>that the king</i> { | <i>is coming</i> = regem venire ( <i>Pres.</i> )       |
| <i>he will say</i> (dicet) |                          | <i>has come</i> = regem venisse ( <i>Perf.</i> )       |
| <i>he has said</i> (dixit) |                          | <i>will come</i> = regem venturum esse ( <i>Fut.</i> ) |

When the Principal Verb is **Historic** (*i.e. Imperf., Aorist, Plup.*), the tense of the Infin. is that which would be used in the Direct Statement.

|                                |                          |                                                            |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>he was saying</i> (dicebat) | } <i>that the city</i> { | <i>was being taken</i> = urbem capi ( <i>Pres.</i> )       |
| <i>he said</i> (dixit)         |                          | <i>had been taken</i> = urbem captam esse ( <i>Perf.</i> ) |
| <i>he had said</i> (dixerat)   |                          | <i>would be taken</i> = urbem captum iri ( <i>Fut.</i> )   |

*N.B.* His words were 'is being' 'has been,' 'will be taken.'



§ 64. *Fore ut, futurum ut*, with Subjunctive.

This construction is often used instead of the Future Infin. Pass.

*He says that the city will be taken* = *dicit fore ut urbs capiatur.*

*He said that the city would be taken* = *dixit fore ut urbs caperetur.*

This construction is also used instead of Fut. Infin. Act., when the Future Participle in -urus is wanting.

'Would have' is expressed by Future Participle with *fuisse* :

Active: *I know (or knew) that he would have come*  
*Scio (sciebam) eum venturum fuisse.*

Passive: *He says (or said) that the city would have been taken.*  
*Dicit (dixit) futurum fuisse ut urbs caperetur.*

## § 65. Observe :

(a) In Future Infin. Act. and Perf. Infin. Pass., the participle agrees with the Subject of the Clause :

*Dixit urbem captam esse.*

(b) If the Infinitive is a Copulative Verb, the Complement will agree with the Subject in the Accus. :

*Dixit urbem magnam esse.*

(c) The Subject pronoun of an Infin. must be expressed :

*He has come* = *Vēnit* (Subj. contained in Verb) : but  
*I know that he has come* = *scio eum venisse.*

(d) *Se* and *eum*. '*He*,' '*she*,' '*they*,' as Subject to an Infin. is '*se*' when '*he*,' '*she*,' etc., refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb ; otherwise it will be '*eum*,' '*eam*,' etc. See § 131.

*Cæsar said that he (C.) would come* =  
 C. *dixit se venturum (esse).*

*Cæsar said that he (some one else) would come* =  
 C. *dixit eum venturum (esse).*

- (e) Use
- Nego**
- instead of
- dico . . . non**
- .

*He said he would not come* = negavit se venturum.

So too, negavit . . . unquam for dixit . . . nunquam.  
negavit . . . quidquam for dixit . . . nihil, etc.

- (f) After verbs of 'hoping,' 'promising,' and 'threatening,' use Future Infin. and supply Subject Pronoun.

*I hope to conquer* = Spero me victurum esse.

- (g) After negative expressions of doubt use quin with Subjunct. See § 118.

- (h) After such expressions as 'it is said,' 'it is reported,' 'it seems,' the Personal Construction with Prolative Infin. is preferred to Acc. and Infin.

*It is said that Cicero has fled* = Dicitur Cicero fugisse =  
*C. is said to have fled*, not Dicitur Ciceronem fugisse.

- (i) Avoid ambiguity, thus :

Scimus Romanos Gallos vicisse, may mean 'The Romans conquered the Gauls' or 'The Gauls conquered the Romans,' but if we use the Passive—Scimus Gallos a Romanis victos esse—the meaning is clear.

## OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS.

## § 66. (1) Ut + Subjunctive

is used instead of Acc. + Infin., to express a clause standing as Subject to certain Impersonal Verbs and Phrases—e.g.

|                        |                                          |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| accidit, or fit        | = <i>it happens</i>                      |
| futurum est            | = <i>it will come to pass</i> [See § 64] |
| sequitur, proximum est | = <i>it follows</i>                      |
| feri (non) potest      | = <i>it is (im)possible</i>              |
| restat, reliquum est   | = <i>it remains</i>                      |
| tantum abest           | = <i>so far from</i> [See § 83, f]       |

Ex. Accidit ut luna esset plena.

*It happened that the moon was full.*

Such clauses are closely allied to Consecutive ; they observe the same rules as regard Tense, and take negative 'non.' [See § 81.]

Observe: (i) Many other Impersonal Verbs, etc., admit either construction, *i.e.* Acc. + Infin. or Ut + Subj., so *convenit, expedit, placet, refert, licet, necesse est.* *N.B.* The last two omit 'ut' when used with Subj.

(ii) Ut + Subj. is also found in Apposition to *hoc, illud, mos, etc.*, but the Acc. and Infin. or Simple Infin. can be used as well.

### § 67. (2) Quod + Indic.

A Substantival Clause expressing an admitted fact is sometimes rendered by *quod (= the fact that) + Indic.*; this construction is most commonly found when the Clause stands

(i) As Subject to Impersonals, especially 'accedit,' thus:

*Accedit huc quod postridie venit.*

*To-this-must-be-added the-fact-that he came, etc.*

(ii) In Apposition to *hoc, illud*, or a noun, thus:

*Unum est illud admiratione dignum, quod censuit, etc.*

*One thing is worthy of admiration, namely, the fact that he thought, etc.*

(iii) As Object to *omitto, praetereo* and (*Imperat.*) *adde*, thus:

*Praetereo quod illam sibi domum delegit.*

*I pass over the fact that he has chosen, etc.*

(iv) Verbs of rejoicing, grieving, and wondering are followed by Acc. + Infin. or Quod + Indic., with little difference in meaning.

*Gaudeo te valere or Gaudeo quod vales.*

The latter construction may be classed as Causal. See § 85.

(v) *Quod + Indic.* often = *as regards the fact that* or *whereas.*

*Quod scripseram me venturum, mutavi consilium.*

*As regards my having written, etc., I have changed my plans.*

The clause is of the same nature as those above, but its relation to the Principal Sentence is Adverbial, not Substantival. See § 87, *c.*

## § 68. II. INDIRECT QUESTION.

*i.e.* A Clause introduced by an **Interrogative word** and standing

- (i) as Object, *We do not know (who did this),*
- (ii) as Subject, *It is doubtful (who did this),*
- (iii) in Apposition.

*N.B.* The Principal Verb is not necessarily one of 'asking.'

## § 69 Construction in Latin.

The Clause is introduced by an **Interrogative**, *quis, cur, etc.*

The Verb is in the **Subjunctive**.

*Ex.* *I ask what he is doing* = *quaero quid faciat.*

## § 70. Tense of the Subjunctive.—Rules of Sequence :

**Primary Tenses follow Primary.**

|                              |   |      |              |                               |
|------------------------------|---|------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| Rogo ( <i>I ask</i> )        | } | quid | faciat       | <i>what he is doing</i>       |
| Rogabo ( <i>shall ask</i> )  |   |      | fecerit      | <i>what he did, has done</i>  |
| Rogavi ( <i>have asked</i> ) |   |      | facturus sit | <i>what he is going to do</i> |

**Historic Tenses follow Historic.**

|                                 |   |      |                |                                |
|---------------------------------|---|------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| Rogabam ( <i>I was asking</i> ) | } | quid | faceret        | <i>what he was doing</i>       |
| Rogavi ( <i>asked</i> )         |   |      | fecisset       | <i>what he had done</i>        |
| Rogaveram ( <i>had asked</i> )  |   |      | facturus esset | <i>what he was going to do</i> |

*N.B.* (i) Rogavi (*Perfect*) = *I have asked*, is a Primary Tense.  
Rogavi (*Aorist*) = *I asked*, is an Historic Tense.

(ii) The Future Perf. Indic. is a Primary Tense.

(iii) The want of a Fut. Subjunctive is supplied by the Fut. Participle with Subjunct. of *sum*—

*i.e.* -urus *sim* (*Primary*) or -urus *essem* (*Historic*).

*would have* = -urus *fuerim* (*Pr.*) or -urus *fuissem* (*Hist.*).

## § 71. Observe: (a) Distinguish the uses of 'who,' 'which,' 'what,' 'when,' 'where,' etc.

(i) as **Interrogatives** introducing Indirect Questions.      (ii) as **Relatives** introducing **Adj. or Adv. Clause**.

*I wonder (who did it)*  
*He asked (where I lived)*  
*Find out (when he came)*

*I saw the man (who did it)*  
*That is the place (where I lived)*  
*We went away (when he came)*

(b) **what**: carefully distinguish Interrog. from Relative.

I know (*what* you like) = *what it is that you like*: Indir. Quest.  
 You do (*what* you like) = *the things which you like*: Relative.

(c) **which**: '*which of two*' is 'uter': of more than two, 'quis.'

(d) **when**: use 'quando' as Interrog., not 'quum.'

(e) **how**: = 'to what extent' (with Adj. or Adv.) use 'quam.'  
 = 'in what manner,' use 'quemadmodum' or 'quomodo.'

(f) **if**: distinguish 'if' = *whether* (Interrog.) from the Conditional 'if.'

Ask him if he is satisfied if = *whether*: Indirect Question.  
 If he is satisfied I am: Adv. Condit. Clause. § 92.

(g) **whether** [or 'if' = *whether*] in Single Indir. Question is -ne or num = '*whether*,' and nonne = *whether . . . not*.

[N.B. 'num' in Indir. Quest. does not necessarily suggest answer 'No.']

(h) **whether . . . or**: Alternative Indirect Questions.

The same particles are used as in the Direct Question, but 'or not' is *neque* instead of *annon*.

*I know not whether this is true or false.*

|        |   |                                 |
|--------|---|---------------------------------|
| nescio | { | utrum verum sit an falsum       |
|        |   | verum-ne sit an falsum          |
|        |   | verum sit an falsum             |
|        |   | utrum verum sit neque (or not). |

Distinguish *whether . . . or*, Interrog. and Conditional.

*I know not whether this is true or false*: utrum . . . an, etc., Ind. Quest.  
*I shall go, whether this is true or false*: sive . . . sive, Condit. See § 92.

§ 72. N.B. An English abstract noun may very often be best rendered in Latin by an Indirect Question.

|                                            |   |                                 |                          |
|--------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>I perceive</i><br>(ask, learn,<br>etc.) | { | <i>the difference</i>           | = quid differat          |
|                                            |   | <i>the cause</i>                | = quae causa sit         |
|                                            |   | <i>the extent of the danger</i> | = quantum sit. periculum |
|                                            |   | <i>the origin of the war</i>    | = unde bellum ortum sit  |
|                                            |   | <i>the position of affairs</i>  | = quo in loco res sint   |

## § 73. III. INDIRECT COMMAND.

*i.e.* A Clause introduced by 'that' (sometimes omitted), and standing as Subject or Object to such verbs as 'command,' 'advise,' 'beg,' 'allow,' 'strive,' etc. (or in Apposit. to the Subj. or Obj.)

- (i) Obj. *He begged (that you would stay).* See Obs. a.  
 (ii) Subj. *It is requested (that you will stay).*

## § 74. Construction in Latin. (For Personal Constr. see § 76.)

Conjunction: *ut* = *that*; *ne* = *that . . . not*.

Verb: Subjunctive { Present in Primary Sequence.  
 Imperf. in Historic Sequence.

Ex. *He commands us to go (= that we go).*  
*Imperat ut eamus.*

*He commanded us to go (= that we should go).*  
*Imperavit ut iremus.*

## § 75. Observe:

(a) 'To': an Indir. Comm. is often expressed in English by the Infinitive. This must be turned into a 'that' clause before translating into Latin. Some verbs of command, however, take Infin. in Latin, as *jubeo*. See § 76 B.

(b) 'Ut' is sometimes omitted in Indir. Comm., especially after 'fac' = 'be sure,' and in reported speeches (see § 68, III.): *ne* must always be expressed, except sometimes after *caveo*.

(c) In Indir. Comm.,

*that no one* = *ne . . . quis.*      *that nothing* = *ne . . . quid.*  
*that no . . .* = *ne ullus.*      *that never* = *ne . . . unquam.*

(d) *neve, neu*: a second negative Indir. Command is introduced by *neve* or *neu* = *and not*. See § 79, c.

(e) *fear*: after verbs of fearing, as 'timeo,' 'vereor,' 'metuo,'  
*ne* = *that*, and *ut* (or *ne non*) = *that . . . not*.  
*vereor ne veniat* = *I fear he will come.*  
*vereor ut veniat* = *I fear he will not come.*

(f) *quin, quominus*: after verbs of 'hindrance' the Clause is strictly Final rather than Indir. Comm.: the usual construction is with *ne* or *quin*, etc. See §§ 118, 119.

- (g) Several verbs (as 'ask,' 'persuade,' 'warn') admit of two slightly different meanings, of which one will be followed by an Indir. Comm., the other by an Indir. Statement or Indir. Question.

*He asked us to stay.* Indir. Comm., **ut + Subjunct.**

*He asked us what we wanted.* Indir. Question, **Interrog. + Subj.**

*He persuaded me (that this was true).* Indir. Stat., **Acc + Inf.**

*He persuaded me (to leave the place).* Indir. Comm., **Ut + Subj.**

Conversely, many verbs ordinarily followed by an Indir. Statement may be used in such a sense as to require the construction of an Indir. Command: *Scribit Labieno (ut) veniat = he writes to tell L. to come.*

§ 76. A. Construction : **ut + Subjunctive.** See § 74.

|                  |                                  |                 |                                  |                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| rogo, ask        | } <b>Accus.</b><br>of<br>Person. | impero, command | } <b>Dative</b><br>of<br>Person. |                                  |
| oro, beseech     |                                  | mando, charge   |                                  |                                  |
| obsecro, entreat |                                  | edico, ordain   |                                  |                                  |
| hortor, exhort   |                                  | suadeo, advise  |                                  |                                  |
| moneo, advise    |                                  | peto, beg       |                                  | } <b>Ab + Abl.</b><br>of Person. |
| precor, pray     |                                  | impetro, obtain |                                  |                                  |
| posco, demand    | postulo, demand                  |                 |                                  |                                  |

efficio, contrive  
curo, take care

video, see (that)  
caveo, beware

id ago, aim at  
operam do, take pains

B. Construction : **Infinitive, or Acc. + Infin.** § 75, a.

|              |                      |                |
|--------------|----------------------|----------------|
| jubeo, bid   | prohibeo, prevent    | patior, suffer |
| veto, forbid | cogo, compel         | sino, allow    |
| volo, wish   | nolo, wish . . . not | cupio, desire  |

**Ex.** *He bade the man go away = jussit hominem abire.*  
*He forbade fires to be made = vetuit ignes fieri.*

Obs. 1. A distinction (of small practical importance) can be made between the construction of the two examples: *hominem* Obj. to *jussit* and *ignes* Subject to *fieri*.

Obs. 2. *Volo, nolo, malo* and *cupio* are also used with Prolative *Infin.* when the Subject of both verbs is the same

**Ex.** *I desire to become consul = cupio consul fieri.*

*N.B.* Many of the above verbs admit of alternative constructions : to avoid confusion these are omitted.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

§ 77. **FINAL** : *i.e.* a Clause introduced by 'that' and denoting the Purpose of the action or state predicated in the Princ. Sent.

*Spare me a little (that I may recover my strength).*

§ 78. **Construction in Latin** [same as in Indir. Command, § 74]—  
**Conjunction** : *ut*=that ; *ne*=that . . . not ; *lest*.

**Verb** : Subjunctive { Present after a Primary Tense.  
Imperf. „ Historic Tense.

[Corresponding Demonstrative in Princ. Sent. (usually omitted) *idcirco* (*therefore*), *ob eam causam*, etc.]

*They come that they may see* = *veniunt ut videant*.

*They came that they might see* = *venērunt ut viderent*.

§ 79. Observe :

(a) **To**. The English Infin. often denotes purpose. The Latin Infin. is *never so used*.

*They came to see, or in order to see* = *that they might see*.

*He fled in order not to be (or to avoid being, or for fear of being) taken* = *lest he should be taken* = *ne caperetur*.

(b) In Final Clauses (as in Indir. Commands. See § 75, c).

*that no one* = *ne quis*.      *that nothing* = *ne quid*.

*that no . . .* = *ne ullus . . .*      *that . . . never* = *ne unquam*.

(c) **neve** and **neu**. A second Final Clause, if Negative, is introduced by *neve* or *neu*, which may be followed by 'quis,' 'quid,' 'ullus,' etc. See § 75, d.

(d) **quo**. A Final Clause containing a Comparative Adj. or Adv. is introduced by *quo* (= *ut eo*) instead of 'ut.'

*Hoc fecit quo tutior esset* = *that he might be safer*.

*Quominus* (= *ut eo minus*) is used after many verbs denoting hindrance, prevention, etc. See § 119.

*Nihil obstat quominus eas* = *nothing prevents your going*.

§ 80. Other Constructions by which Purpose is denoted :

|               |   |                      |                       |
|---------------|---|----------------------|-----------------------|
| legatos misit | } | qui pacem peterent   | Qui Final. See § 113. |
|               |   | ad pacem petendam    | Gerundive.            |
|               |   | pacis petendae causa |                       |
|               |   | pacem petitum        | Supine.               |



§ 81. **CONSECUTIVE**: *i.e.* a Clause introduced by 'that' and denoting the **Result** or **Consequence** of the action or state predicated in the Principal Sentence.

*I am so feeble that (I cannot speak).*

*N.B.* A Consec. Clause usually corresponds to 'so' or 'such' in Principal Sentence.

§ 82. **Construction in Latin**—

**Corresponding Demonstr.**: tam, ita, tantus, talis, etc.

**Conjunction**: ut = *that*; ut . . . non = *that . . . not*.

**Verb**: Subjunctive; tense as in the English (but see § 83, b).

*The storm was so great that they could not sail.*

*Tanta erat tempestas ut solvere non possent.*

§ 83. **Observe**:

(a) **To**. Consequence may be expressed by the Infin. in English, but not in Latin, thus: 'he is so bold as to say' or 'he is bold enough to say' must be turned into 'he is so bold that he says' = ut dicat.

(b) **In** Historic Sequence both Imperf. and Aorist Subjunct. may be used with a slight difference of meaning: thus, Ita audax erat,

{ ut hoc diceret = *as to say this, Natural Consequence.*  
 { ut hoc dixerit = *that he said this, Actnal Consequence.*

*N.B.* dixerit may also be Perfect = *that he has said*.

(c) A Future Subjunctive is supplied (as in Indir. Question, § 10, ii) thus: 'will,' Fut. Partic. + sim; 'would,' Fut. Part. + essem; 'would have,' Fut. Part. + fuerim.

(d) **In** Consec. Clauses (Compare Final, § 79 b):

*that no one . . .* = ut nemo    *that nothing* = ut nihil;  
*that no . . .* = ut nullus    *that never* = ut nunquam.

(e) A **second** Negative Consec. CL is introduced by **nec**, which may be followed by quisquam, ullus, unquam, etc.

(f) *So far from laughing he is crying* = tantum abest ut rideat, ut fleat. See § 66.

(g) **too**: *This is too difficult for me to undertake.*  
 Difficilius est quam ut suscipiam. See § 114, c.

§ 84. **Other Constructions.**

**Qui** with Consecutive force is very frequent. See § 114.

§ 85. **CAUSAL**: *i.e.* a Clause denoting the Cause of the action or state predicated in the Principal Sentence.

*Then are they glad (because they are at rest).*

§ 86. **Construction in Latin**—

Conjunctions.—A. *quod* or *quia* = *because* } with **Indicative**  
                   *quoniam* = *since* } (but see § 87, *b*).

B. *cum* (*quum*) = *since* with **Subjunctive**.

A. *He was afraid to pursue farther, because he did not know the country.*

*Longius prosequi veritus est, quod naturam loci ignorabat.*

B. *Since this was the case, he resolved to set out.*

*Quae cum ita essent, proficisci constituit.*

Corresp. Demonstr. (often omitted): *propterea, ideo, idcirco, etc.*

§ 87. **Observe** :

(a) **non quod** = *not because*, is followed by Subjunct. when the Cause mentioned is rejected as not the real one.

(b) **Suboblique** (see § 123). The Verb will be in the Subjunct. whatever Conjunction is used, if the Clause is **Suboblique**, *i.e.* dependent on an Indir. Statement, Question, or Command. Thus: *Dixit se prosequi vereri quod naturam loci ignoraret*; or if the Clause is **virtually Suboblique** (§ 124), *i.e.* if it denotes an *alleged* cause, not necessarily the real one—

*Aristides expulsus est, quod praeter modum justus esset.*

*A. was banished because (as they said) he was too just.*

(c) A **Quod** clause sometimes denotes, not the cause of the action, but the matter with reference to which a remark is made. See § 67, *v*.

*Quod venisti bene fecisti* = *as regards your coming, you have done well* = *you have done well in coming.*

§ 88. **Other Constructions**—

**Qui** with Causal force, usually with Subjunctive (§ 115).

*Laudo te qui hoc facias* = *I praise you for doing this.*

A **Participial Phrase** or **Abl. Absolute**. See § 121.

§ 89. **TEMPORAL** : *i.e.* a Clause indicating the Time of the action or state predicated in the Principal Sentence.

(*When clouds are seen*) wise men put on their cloaks.

§ 90. Construction in Latin—

The Temporal Conjunctions may be divided thus :

A. Those ordinarily used with **Indic.** (unless **Suboblique**).

ubi, ut = *when*. postquam = *after*. § 91, a, b.

simul ac = *as soon as*. § 91, a, b.

quotiens = *as often as*. § 91, e (i).

dum, donec, } = *while, as long as*. § 91, c.  
quoad, quamdiu }

B. Those used with **Indic.** or **Subjunct.**, *viz.*—

(i) With **Indic.** (unless **Suboblique**) if time only is marked by the Clause.

(ii) With **Subjunct.** if Cause, Purpose, Prevention, etc., is implied.

cum (or quum) = *when*. § 91, e.

antequam, priusquam = *before*. § 91, d.

dum, donec, quoad = *until*. § 91, c.

§ 91. **Tense.** The tense of the Verb usually follows the English ; but see a, b, c, ii.

(a) **Future Time.** When the Verb of Principal Sentence is Future, that of the Clause (if **Indic.**) will be Fut. or Fut. Perf., even though the Pres. or Perf. is used in English :

*He will love as long as he lives* = dum vivet, amabit.

*When I (have) come, he will go* = ubi venero, abibit.

(b) **Past Time.**

(i) With **ubi**, **postquam**, **simul ac**, a Latin Aorist often represents an English Pluperf. :

*Ubi haec animadvertit* = *when he (had) observed this*.

(ii) With **cum** (quum) a Latin Imperf. or Plup. often represents English Aorist.

*cum haec videret* = *when he saw ; seeing this*.

*cum venisset* = *when he came ; on coming*.

- (c) A. (i) **Dum, donec, quoad, quamdiu** = *while*, i.e. *as long as*, are followed by any Tense of Indic. required by the sense :

*Dum vivo, spero* = *while I live, I hope.*

- (ii) **Dum** (not *donec*, etc.) = *while*, i.e. 'at some period during the time that,' is used with **Present Indic.** (even with reference to past events and in Suboblique Clauses) :

*Dum haec geruntur, nuntiatum est.*

*While this was going on, news was brought.*

B. **Dum, donec, quoad** = *until*,

are used with Indic. or Subj. acc. to § 90, B—

- (i) Ind. : *Dum rediit, silentium fuit* = *till he returned*, etc. (simple Time).
- (ii) Subj. : *Expectavit dum naves convenirent* = *till they should assemble* (Purpose).

*N.B.* **Dum, dummodo** = 'provided that,' 'if only,' introduce Conditional (not Temporal) Clauses, always with Subjunct. See § 95, *d.*

(d) **Antequam and Priusquam** = *before*,

with Indic. or Subj. acc. to § 90, B.

- (i) Ind. : *Amicus fui antequam ille reipublicae factus est inimicus.*  
*I was his friend before he became an enemy*, etc. (simple Time).

- (ii) Subj. : *Priusquam se ex terrore reciperent, impetum fecit.*  
*Before they could recover : i.e. to prevent their recovering* (Purpose).

*N.B.* **Ante** and **prius** are often placed separately in the Principal Sentence : *Prius ad castra pervenit quam Germani sentire possent.*

(e) **Cum** (quum)= *when*,

is ordinarily used with

**Present and Future or Fut. Perf. Indic**

**Imperf. and Pluperf. Subjunctive.** § 91, b, ii.

even when Time only is indicated.

For exceptions see below, i, ii, iii.

*Cum pauca millia passuum abesset, legati venerunt.*

*When he was a few miles distant.*

*Cum haec dixisset, signum dedit.*

*When he had said this, he gave the signal.*

*Veniam, cum potero.* § 91, a.

*When I am (i.e. shall be) able, I will come.*

*N.B.*—**Cum** should not, as a rule, be used with Latin **Aorist** (but see Obs. iii). The English Aorist can generally be represented by **Imperf. or Pluperf. Subjunctive**. See § 91, ii.

Obs.: (i) **cum** (like *quoties*)= *whenever*, is used with Indic. Perf. (*Prim.*), Plup. (*Hist.*): *Cum ver esse coeperat, dabat se labori*= *whenever spring began*.

(ii) Inverse **cum**: Indic. is used when the time is really marked by what is grammatically the Principal Sentence: *Jam hoc facere apparabant, cum matres repente prorrerunt*.

*They were already preparing to do this when suddenly the matrons ran forward.*

(iii) **cum**= *quo tempore*= 'at the time when,' denoting exact coincidence, and usually corresponding to *tum*, may be used even with Past Tenses of Indic. This construction should be very cautiously used. See § 91, b.

(iv) **cum**= *since*, with Subjunct. See § 86. Causal Clauses.

(v) **cum**= *although*, with Subjunct. See § 98.

§ 92. **CONDITIONAL** : *i.e.* a Clause introduced by 'if' or 'unless,' and indicating a Condition on which the predication of the Principal Sentence depends.

(*If ye have tears,*) *prepare to shed them now.*

[A Conditional Clause is often called the **Protasis**, and the Principal Sentence on which it depends the **Apodosis**.]

§ 93. **Construction in Latin**—

**Conjunctions** : *si* = *if*; *nisi* = *unless, if not* (§ 95, *a*).

**Mood** : the Mood of the Protasis (Clause) is determined by that of the Apodosis (Principal Sent.) : thus

| Apodosis.                                                                    | Protasis.      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| A. Indic. or Imperat. (N.B. i.) . . . . .                                    | Indicative.    |
| B. { Subjunct. (or equivalent, N.B. iii.)<br>Infinitive (Indir. Statement) } | } Subjunctive. |

Ex. A. *If you ask, I answer* = *si rogas, respondeo.*  
*If you are well, rejoice* = *si vales, gaude.*

B. *If he had come, he would have seen.*  
*Si venisset, vidisset.*

*N.B.* (i) 'Imperative' must be taken to include Pres. and Perf. Subj. used in Commands : *as, Veniat* = *let him come.*

(ii) Observe that in B the Apodosis in English implies the existence of a condition, and generally contains the auxiliary 'would'; in A no condition is implied by the Apodosis.

(iii) Certain combinations are regarded as equivalent to a Subjunct. in Principal Sentence, and therefore require Subjunct. in the Conditional Clause, *viz.*—

(*a*) Gerundive or Fut. Participle with *sum* (esp. Past Tenses).

(*b*) *Possum, debeo, oportet* (esp. Past Tenses) with *Infin.*

|      |                            |                               |                                                                |
|------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| thus | <i>venturus eras</i>       | <i>you were about to come</i> | } = <i>you would have</i><br><i>come</i><br>= <i>venisses.</i> |
|      | <i>veniendum tibi erat</i> | <i>you ought to have come</i> |                                                                |
|      | <i>venire te oportuit</i>  | " "                           |                                                                |
|      | <i>venire debuisti</i>     | " "                           |                                                                |
|      | <i>venire potuisti</i>     | <i>you might have come</i>    |                                                                |

## § 94. Tense.

## A. In Indic. Condit. Clause,

the tense follows the English, except—

- (i) When the English Pres. is used for Future.  
§ 91 (a).

*He will come if he is (=shall be) able=veniet, si poterit.*

- (ii) When 'if'='whenever' (frequentative use), the English Aorist is represented by Latin Plup. Cf. cum and quotiens, § 91 e, i.

*If (whenever) anyone fell off his horse, they surrounded him.*

*Si quis equo deciderat, circumstitebant.*

## B. In Subjunct. Condit. Clauses,

the ordinary use of Tenses is as follows :—

Suppositions referring to

- |                   |                  |                               |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|
| (i) Future time   | (still possible) | Pres. Subjunct. <i>N.B.</i>   |
| (ii) Present time | (impossible)     | Imperf. Subjunct. <i>N.B.</i> |
| (iii) Past time   | (impossible)     | Pluperf. Subjunct.            |

- (i) *If he*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{were to come} \\ \text{should come} \\ \text{came} \end{array} \right\}$  *he would say = si veniat, dicat.*

- (ii) *If he were here now, he would say = si adesset, diceret.*

- (iii) *If he had come, he would have said = si venisset, dixisset.*

*N.B.* 1. By an 'impossible' supposition is meant one that is negated by the form of the expression, thus (ii) implies 'he is not here,' and (iii) 'he did not come.' A 'possible' supposition is one not so negated, as in (i), even though it may refer to a physical impossibility, as 'if he were to rise from the dead.'

2. In using the above table, Present Time must be interpreted strictly as ceasing with the moment of speaking. Thus, 'if he were to appear now' is not a Present but a Fut. Supposition, since it implies that at the moment of speaking he has not appeared and is not appearing.

3. Constructions (ii) and (iii) may be combined thus:

*If he had done it, he would be living = si fecisset, viveret.*

4. Imperf. Subj., besides being used as above, may refer to Past Time, where the Action or State is regarded as continuous: *Si valeret = if he had been well.* Pres. Subj. sometimes refers to Present Time: *Si quis nunc adsit = if any one should be present (which is possible).*

### § 95. Observe :

#### (a) Nisi, si non.

*Nisi* negatives the whole clause; *si non* negatives some word in the clause: *Nemo saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit = unless he is mad.*

For example of 'si non' see below (b).

#### (b) Sin, si non, si minus.

A second Condit. Clause of contrary meaning to the first,

- (i) if affirmative, is introduced by *sin* (or *si*),  
 (ii) if negative, is introduced by *si non* or *si minus*.

(i) *si manebit, laudabo : sin ahibit, culpabo.*

(ii) *si manebit, laudabo : { si non manebit  
 { si minus (no verb) } culpabo.*

#### (c) Sive . . . sive or seu . . . seu = whether . . . or.

These introduce two alternative Conditions [Mood, etc., like 'si.']

Distinguish *whether . . . or, seu . . . -seu, Conditional,*  
 from *whether . . . or, utrum . . . -an, Interrog.*

*Whether you believe it or not, this is true.*

*Seu credis seu non credis, hoc verum est (Conditional).*

*I ask whether this is true or false (Indirect Quest.).*

*Quaero utrum hoc verum sit an falsum.*

- (d) *Dum, modo, dummodo = 'provided that,' 'if only,'* may introduce a Conditional Clause, always with Subjunctive; if the Clause is Negative *ne* is added.

*Omnia honesta neglegunt dum potentiam consequantur.*

*They neglect what is honourable, provided they get power.*

### § 96. Other Constructions.

A Participle used either Attributively or in Abl. Absol. may = a Conditional Clause. See § 121.

*Nihil artes valent, nisi adjuvante Natura.*



§ 97. **CONCESSIVE**: *i.e.* a Clause introduced by 'though,' 'even if,' 'granting that,' etc., and conceding an objection to the predication of the Principal Sentence.

*Angels are bright still, though the greatest fell.*

*N.B.* Clauses introduced by 'however,' 'whoever,' 'whatever,' etc., have a concessive force: see § 99.

§ 98. **Construction in Latin**—

A. **Quamquam** = *although* (admitted fact), with **Indic.**

Quamquam animus meminisse horret, incipiam.

*Though my soul shudders at the memory, I will begin.*

B. **Quamvis** = *although* (imaginary case), with **Subj.**

Licet, (more rarely) ut, cum = *although*, with **Subj.**

Quamvis sis molestus, nunquam confitebor.

*However troublesome you may be, I will never allow.*

C. **Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi** = '*although*,' follow the rules for 'si' (see § 99), *viz.*—

Indic. if the Princ. Verb is Indic. or Imperat.

Subj. if           ,,           ,,           Subj. (or equiv.)

**Corresponding Demonstratives**: tamen = *yet*, (more rarely) at, certe.

§ 99. **Observe** :

(a) Clauses introduced by the Universal Relatives [quisquis, quicumque = *whoever*, ubicumque = *wherever*, etc.] must sometimes be classed as Concessive. Mood, **Indic.**, unless suboblique.

Quicquid id est, timeo Danaos.

*Whatever it is, I fear the Danai.*

*N.B.* The Universal Relatives have always a Concessive force; when, however, they can be referred to an Anteced. or Correlative, expressed or supplied, the Clause may be classed as Adjectival, Temporal, etc.

*Whatever he says (that) is right*,—**Adjectival.**

*Whenever it rains (then) it pours*,—**Adv. Temporal.**

but *Whatever you do, I shall stay*,—**Adv. Concessive.**

(b) A Participial phrase may be Concessive. See §121.

§ 100. **COMPARATIVE**: *i.e.* a Clause introduced by 'as,' 'as if,' 'than,' etc., and denoting the Manner or Measure of the action or state predicated in the Princ. Sentence.

Ex. (*As the tree falls,*) *so shall it lie.*

*N.B.* Clauses introduced by 'as' and 'than' are very often elliptical: those introduced by 'as if' are always so.

Ex. *He flourisheth as a flower of the field* [*flourisheth*].  
*He behaved as* [*he would behave*] *if he were mad.*

§ 101. **Construction in Latin**—

Corresp. Demonstr.: *ita, sic, etc.* } see table,  
 Conjunction: *ut, ac, quam, etc.* } § 43.

Verb. A. Indicat. in compar. with *real* case, 'as.'

*Res sic est ut narro* = *the matter is as I tell you.*

B. Subjunct. in compar. with *imaginary* case, 'as if.'

*Absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrebant.*

*Though he was absent, they shuddered at A.'s cruelty as if he had been present.*

§ 102. **Observe** :

(a) Distinguish the uses of 'as'—

*He did as he was told.* Comparative, **ut + Indic.**

*I am not so mad as to think.* Consec. **ut + Subj.**

*He ran, so as to be in time.* Final, **ut + Subj.**

(b) Clauses introduced by 'ut' are often merely parenthetical: thus, 'ut saepe fit' = *as often happens*; *ut ante dictum est* = *as has been mentioned*, etc.

(c) Elliptical. The verb of a Comparat. Clause is often omitted, the construction of the remaining words being the same as if it were expressed.

*Eadem ac tu peto* = *I seek the same as you (seek).*

*Ita eum aspexit ut perditum civem.* [*citizen.*]

*He looked on him as (he would look on) a bad*

(d) *As possible*: *quam + Superl.*, with or without *possum*.  
*Quam maximas copias* [*potuit*] *coegit* = *he collected as many troops as possible, or 'as he could.'*

## § 103. TABLE OF COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, ETC.

A. Comparison with an *actual* case. Indicative.

| <i>Demonst.</i>     | <i>Conjunct.</i> | <i>Demonst.</i>   | <i>Conjunct.</i> |
|---------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| so [manner] . . .   | as               | sic or ita . . .  | ut               |
| so or as [degree]   | as               | tam . . . .       | quam, Obs. (i)   |
| so (or as) great .  | as               | tantus . . .      | quantus, ,,      |
| such . . . .        | as               | talis . . . .     | qualis, ,,       |
| so (or as) many .   | as               | tot . . . .       | quot, ,,         |
| the [more] . . .    | the [more]       | eo (+ Comp.) .    | quo (+ Comp.)    |
| See also Obs. (iii) |                  | tanto (+ Comp.)   | quanto ,,        |
| in proportion .     | as               | pro eo . . . .    | ac               |
| the same . . .      | as               | idem . . . .      | ac or qui        |
| just, exactly, } .  | as               | {perinde, juxta } | ac               |
| like, etc. }        |                  | {pariter, aequè } |                  |
| contrary . . . .    | to what          | contra . . . .    | ac or quam (ii)  |
| otherwise, other.   | than             | alius, aliter .   | ac or quam (ii)  |
| more . . . .        | than             | Comparative .     | quam             |

B. Comparison with *imaginary* case. Subjunctive.

|           |   |                 |       |              |
|-----------|---|-----------------|-------|--------------|
| as if     | } | sic, ita . . .  | {     | velut (si)   |
| as though |   |                 |       | quasi, ut si |
| as if     |   |                 |       | tanquam si   |
|           |   | perinde, etc. . | ac si |              |

## § 104. Observe :

- (i) Clauses introduced by *qualis*, *quantus*, and *quot*, may be taken as Adjectival (§108): *quam* and *quantum* are certainly Adverbial.
- (ii) *Quam* may be used after *contra*, *alius*, and *alibi*, with 'a Negative': thus, *haud aliter quam* = *not otherwise than*.
- (iii) Special uses of 'ut'—

*Ille, ut erat prudens, respondit* = *with his usual prudence*.  
*Scriptor fuit, ut temporibus illis, luculentus* = *a clear writer, for those days*.

*Ut fortasse vere, sic parum utiliter* = *truly perhaps, but not usefully*.

*Ut quisque sapientissimus est, ita minime haec facit* = *the wiser a man is the less he does this*.

## § 105. ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES :

*i.e.* Clauses qualifying a Noun or Pronoun, and introduced by the Relative Pronoun, *who, which, that, what* (§ 107 *d.*), *as* (see § 108) :

*Uneasy lies the head (that wears a crown) ;*

or by the Relat. Adv., *where, when, etc.* (§ 109):  
*It was the time (when lilies blow).*

## § 106. Construction in Latin :

The Clause is introduced by—

1. The Rel. Pron., *qui* (= *who, which, that, etc.*).
2. The Rel. Adj., *qualis, quantus, quot.* § 108.
3. The Rel. Adverbs, *ubi, unde, quo.* § 109.

**Mood:** The Verb is Indicative (unless the Clause is *Suboblique*, or has an *Adverbial* force, *i.e.* Final, Consecutive, etc. See § 112).

*Nuntii, (qui missi erant,) redierunt.*

*The messengers (who had been sent) returned.*

**In Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case,** the Relative agrees with the **Antecedent**, *i.e.* the Noun or Pron. qualified by the Clause.

*The legions, which he had sent, returned.*

*Legiones (quas miserat) redierunt.*

*We, who did this, are present.*

*Nos (qui hoc fecimus,) adsumus.*

**Case:** The Case of the Relative is determined by its work in the Clause, *e.g.* in the first example, *qui* is Subject, and therefore Nom.; in the second, '*quas*' is Object, and therefore Acc.

[The case may be ascertained thus:

*The ships (which he sent) have returned.*

'*which*' = '*ships*'; '*which he sent*' = '*ships he sent*'  
= '*he sent ships*': '*ships*' would be Acc.; '*which*'  
will be Acc.

The Gen. Dat. and Abl. offer no difficulty.]

If the Relative refers to more than one Antecedent of different Gender and Person, the same rules apply as for agreement of Adjectives.

§ 107. Observe :

- (a) **Omission of the Relative.** The Relative is often omitted in English, never in Latin.

*The words*  $\wedge$  *you spoke* = *verba quae locutus es.*

- (b) **The Antecedent.** The Demonstrative corresponding to *qui* is 'is, ea, id,' thus : *is qui* = '*he who,*' or '*the man who*' ; *ea quae* = '*the things which.*

- (c) **Antecedent omitted.** The Antecedent *is, ii, etc.,* is often omitted when both Rel. and Antecedent are Nom. or Acc.

*Those who say this* = *qui hoc dicunt.*

Observe, *Sunt qui* = *there are some who.* See §114, b.

- (d) **What.** Distinguish Relat. from Interrog. § 71, b.

*Give him what he wants* = *the things which.*  
Rel. Adj. Clause.

*Find out what he wants* = *what it is that.*  
Subst. Cl. Ind. Quest.

- (e) **Relative as Subject to an Infin.** The Relative Pronoun may stand as Accus. Subject to an Infin.

*Ii, quos fugere credebant, redierant.*

*Those whom they supposed to be flying, returned.*

- (f) **Superlative attracted.** A Superl. Adj. (*or unus or solus*) agreeing with the Antecedent is usually attracted into the Clause.

*He sent the most trusty slave he had.*

*Misit servum quem habuit fidelissimum.*

- (g) **Attraction of Relative.** A Relative standing as Subject to a Copulative Verb is often attracted into the Gender and Number of the Complement.

*Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est.*

- (h) **Attraction of Antecedent.** If the Antec. is itself in Apposition, it is usually attracted into the Clause.

*Athens, a city which, etc.* = *Athenae, quae urbs.*

- (i) **Inverse order.** The position of Princ. Sent. and Clause is sometimes reversed, especially when the Antecedent is 'is,' or 'hic,' and is strongly emphasised.

*Quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pecunia.*

§ 108 **Qualis, quantus, quot.** See also § 103, § 71.

These Relative Adjectives correspond to Demonstratives. Construction the same as that of 'qui.'

| Demonstrative.                       | Relative.             |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| talis = <i>such</i> . . .            | qualis = <i>as</i> .  |
| tantus = <i>so great</i> . . .       | quantus = <i>as</i> . |
| tot (indecl.) = <i>so many</i> . . . | quot = <i>as</i> .    |

*The storm was such (so great) as I had never seen.*

*Tanta erat tempestas, quantam nunquam antea vidi.*

§ 109. **Ubi, unde, quo.**

Clauses introduced by *ubi* = *where* (or *when*), *unde* = *whence*, *quo* = *whither*, may be

- (i) **Adject.:** Ad locum redierunt unde profecti erant.
- (ii) **Adverbial:** Eodem redierunt unde profecti erant.
- (iii) **Subst. Ind. Qu.:** Nescio, unde profecti sint. § 68.

In (i) the clause qualifies a noun, and is therefore Adjectival. Construction same as that of *qui*. (ii) should be classed as Adv. (Local), but the construction is the same as that of (i), and 'eodem' is equivalent to 'ad eundem locum.'

§ 110. **Other Constructions :**

An Engl. Rel. Adj. Clause is often avoided in Latin.

*He was the first who came* = primus venit (so, solus, ultimus.

*It was I who did this* = ego hoc feci.

*This is what I aim at* = hoc peto.

*Such a danger as this is* = hoc tantum periculum.

*He points out the great opportunity which is offered*  
= quanta detur facultas demonstrat. (Ind. Quest.).

§ 111. **Qui Coordinate.**

Besides being used to introduce Subordinate Clauses, *Qui* is very often used as a Conjunction combined with a Demonstrative : *Qui* = *et hic*, *et is*.

So, often, at the beginning of a fresh sentence : *Quibus auditis* = *et his auditis* ; *quae cum ita essent* = *et cum haec*, etc.

§ 112. QUI, etc., with SUBJUNCTIVE.

Clauses introduced by the Relative **qui, qualis, ubi**, etc., though in form Adjectival (*i.e.* qualifying a Noun), have frequently an **Adverbial force** (often Final or Consec., sometimes Causal or Concessive).

In such cases the Clause **Verb** is in the **Subjunctive**.

§ 113. Qui Final = *in order that = to.*

Misit legatos qui pacem peterent.

*He sent envoys who should ask for peace, i.e. to ask for.*

[*N.B.* quominus = 'by which the less,' comes under this head.

Nihil obstat quominus abeat = *nothing prevents his going.*]

§ 114. Qui Consecutive = (*such*) . . . *that* :

(a) after 'is' = 'of such a sort.'

Neque is sum qui mortis periculo terrear.

*I am not the man to be frightened, etc.*

(b) after **Negative, Interrogative, and Indefinite** expressions : as, Nemo est ; Quis est ? Sunt.

Sunt qui credant = *There are some who believe.*

Quis est qui non intelligat ? = *Who is there who does not perceive ?*

[*N.B.* In such Clauses quin is often used for qui non.]

(c) after **Comparatives** :

Sapientior est quam qui hoc dicat = *too wise to say this.*

(d) after **dignus, indignus** :

Digni erant qui laudarentur = *worthy to be praised.*

§ 115. Qui Causal = 'since,' 'seeing that,' often with quippe or ut prefixed :

Laudo te qui hoc facias = *I praise you for doing this.*

But the Indic. may also be used : qui facis.

§ 116. Qui Concessive = *though* :

Qui jam antea inimico animo fuisset, multo gravius exarsit = *though he had previously been hostile.*

## § 117. QUIN.

Only after **Negative** (or Virtually Neg.) Princ. Sent.  
Always with **Subjunctive**.

[*N.B.* Vix (*scarcely*), aegre (*with difficulty*), Quis est ? are virtual Negatives.]

1. Quin = qui (Nom.) + non. See § 114.

Quis est quin fleat ? = *Who is there who does not weep?*

Nemo est quin fleat = *There is no one but weeps.*

§ 118. 2. Quin = quâ (Old Abl.) + non or ne  
is especially used after—

(a) Neg. expressions of doubt <sup>1</sup>: haud dubium est.

Quis dubitat quin verum sit ?

*Who doubts that it is true ?*

(b) Fieri non potest (quin videant).

*It is impossible but that they should see.*

(c) Facere non possum (quin fleam).

*I cannot help weeping.*

(d) Minimum abest (quin fleam).

*I am very nearly weeping.*

(e) Nunquam diem praetermittit (quin veniat).

*He never lets a day pass without coming.*

(f) Most Verbs of Hindrance with Neg.

Vix retineri poterant quin impetum facerent.

*They could scarcely be restrained from charging.*

3. Quin is also used in Direct Questions = Cur non.

Quin taces ? = *why don't you keep silent ?*

## § 119. QUOMINUS (= ut eo minus) ; § 113.

is used after most Verbs of Hindrance, whether Negative or not : as, impedio, deterreo, obsto, ob-sisto, repugno, etc. Always with **Subjunctive**.

Nihil impedit quominus eas = *Nothing prevents your going.*

*N.B.* Verbs of Hindrance may also take ne and Subj. or, if negatived, quin. Prohibeo generally takes Infin.

<sup>1</sup> After Affirmative expressions of doubt, the usual construction is Indirect Quest. introduced by an (*whether*) with Subjunct.; dubito = *I hesitate (to)* takes a Proulative Infinitive.



A PARTICIPLE or PARTICIPIAL PHRASE is often equivalent to an Adjectival or Adverbial Clause.

§ 120. **Adjectival.** Legati a rege missi = qui missi sunt.  
Vulnerati = ii qui vulnerati erant *or* sunt, etc.

*N.B.* In translating such a phrase as 'those wounded in this battle, write 'vulnerati,' or 'ii qui vulnerati sunt,' but not 'ii vulnerati.'

§ 121. **Adverbial.**

Participial Phrases have often the force of a Temporal or of a Causal Clause, or of the two combined ; less frequently they are Concessive or Conditional :

**Causal.** His rebus adducti, legatos miserunt = quod adducti sunt.

His rebus cognitis, legatos miserunt = quum haec cognovissent.

**Temporal.** Tertium annum regnantem, interfecerunt = dum tertium annum regnat = *in the third year of his reign.*

Hunc egressum e navi comprehenderunt = postquam egressus est = *after he had landed.*

Bello confecto, rediit = cum bellum confecisset = *when (because) he had finished it.*

**Concessive.** Romani, non rogati, auxilium offerunt = quanquam non rogati sunt = *though they were not asked.*

Me invito, hoc factum = *I being unwilling = though I was unwilling.*

**Conditional.** Homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, non temperaturos ab injuria existimabat.

*He thought that, if permission were given, they would not refrain.*

## § 122. ORATIO OBLIQUA. See also § 126.

The words of a speaker may be reported in two ways :

1. **Direct Speech**—where the actual words are quoted.
2. **Indirect Speech**—where the words are thrown into grammatical dependence on a verb of saying, asking, etc.

| Direct.                                       | Indirect.                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Statement. ‘ <i>I will go,</i> ’ said he.     | <i>He said he would go.</i>    |
| Question. ‘ <i>Why do they go?</i> ’ said he. | <i>He asked why they went.</i> |
| Command. ‘ <i>Go,</i> ’ he said (to us).      | <i>He bade us go.</i>          |
| Statement. ‘ <i>Ibo</i> ’ inquit.             | <i>Dixit se iturum.</i>        |
| Question. ‘ <i>Cur eunt?</i> ’ inquit.        | <i>Quaesivit cur irent.</i>    |
| Command. ‘ <i>Ite</i> ’ inquit.               | <i>Imperavit ut iremus.</i>    |

**Oratio Obliqua** or **Indirect Speech** thus includes the three forms of Substantival Clause, viz. Indirect Statement, Question, and Command.

- Obs. 1. ‘**Inquit**’ is used in reporting directly.  
 ‘**Ait,**’ ‘**dicit,**’ etc., in reporting indirectly.
2. ‘**Inquit**’ never stands first.  
 ‘*I am unwilling,*’ says he, ‘*to undertake this work.*’  
 ‘**Nolo**’ inquit ‘**hoc opus suscipere.**’

## § 123. Suboblique Clauses. See also § 129.

A Clause depending on Oratio Obliqua, *i.e.* on (i) an Indirect Stat., (ii) Quest. or (iii) Comm., is said to be **Suboblique**. See below, *N.B.*

The verb of a Subobl. Cl. (if Finite) is in the **Subjunct.**

- (i) *He said [he would send the forces (he had with him)].*  
*Dixit se copias (quas secum haberet) missurum.*
- (ii) *He begged [to be left (because he feared the sea)].*  
*Petebat ut relinqueretur (quod mare timeret).*
- (iii) *He asked [why the messenger (he had sent) had not returned].*  
*Rogavit cur nuntius (quem misisset) nondum rediisset.*

*N.B.* Adj. and Adv. Clauses really dependent on any Subjunctive Clause (Condit., etc.) (though not strictly Suboblique) as a rule follow the same construction.

**Ex.** *Accidit ut nonnulli milites, qui in silvas discessissent, equitum adventu interciperentur.*

### § 124. Virtual Suboblique.

An Adj. or Adv. Clause, though not grammatically dependent on Or. Obl., may be **virtually** Suboblique :

- (i) When the Principal Sentence practically contains an Ind. Statement: *Ei qui primus murum conscendisset praemium proposuit = se daturum pollicitus est.*
- (ii) When the Clause expresses the thought of some one other than the writer, some such parenthesis as 'so he said' being implied :

*Frumentum, quod polliciti essent, flagitabat.*  
*He demanded the corn which (he said) they had promised.*

This construction is very common with 'quod' = *because* (§ 87, *b*), where the alleged reason is given, and not necessarily adopted by the writer, especially after verbs denoting 'praise,' 'blame,' 'surprise.'

*Accusatus est quod corrumperet juventutem.*  
*He was charged with corrupting the young men.*

### § 125. Exceptions to the Rule for Suboblique Clauses.

A Clause grammatically Suboblique (see § 123), may have its verb in the Indie. in certain cases.

- (i) Where the Clause is not an essential part of the Statement, etc. :  
(Renuntiant) *silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine, quae appellatur Bacenis.*  
Here the fact '*that the forest is called B.*' is not a part of the messengers' report, but a parenthetical note inserted by the historian. 'Appelletur' would make it part of the report.
- (ii) Where it is desired to emphasise a fact :  
*Existimavit te dicere quae sentiebas = what you really thought.*
- (iii) Where a short Rel. Adj. Clause forms a mere definition or qualification :  
*Quaero a vobis ut haec pauca, quae restant, audiat*  
*= the remainder of my speech.*
- (iv) Clauses introduced by 'dum' = *while*, i.e. *at some point during the time that* (see § 91, *c ii.*), retain Pres. Indic ; so often Clauses with 'ut = *as.*'

### § 126. CONTINUOUS ORATIO OBLIQUA.

In reporting (indirectly) **detached** sentences like those in § 122, the Indir. Statement, Question, or Command is introduced by an appropriate verb of *saying, asking, or commanding*. In reporting (indirectly) **continuous** speeches, it is not necessary to repeat or change the verb of '*saying*,' etc., before each sentence, even though the Questions or Commands may follow upon Statements, or *vice versa*. Thus :

Direct.

'*I,*' said he, '*will undertake the matter. Why do you hesitate? Do not lose such an opportunity.*'

'*Ego,*' inquit, '*rem suscipiam. Cur dubitatis? Ne tantam occasionem omiseritis.*'

Indirect.

*He would undertake the matter. Why did they hesitate? Let them not lose such an opportunity.*

(Dixit): *Se rem suscepturum. Cur dubitarent? Ne tantam occasionem omitterent.*

### § 127. CONVERSION OF DIRECT TO INDIRECT SPEECH.

In turning a Speech from the Direct to the Indirect form the following changes will occur :

#### Pronouns.

The 1st and 2nd Pers. are converted into 3rd Pers

|              |         |                                |
|--------------|---------|--------------------------------|
| ego, nos     | become  | se (ipse in Nom.)              |
| meus, noster | „       | suus*                          |
| tu, vos      | „       | ille, illi, is, ii (or se*)    |
| tuus, vester | „       | { illius, illorum } (or suus*) |
|              |         | { ejus, eorum }                |
| se, suus     | remain. |                                |

\*For the various uses of *se, suus* = *him, his*, etc., see § 131.

#### Adverbs of Time and Place.

|                     |        |               |
|---------------------|--------|---------------|
| nunc, hodie         | become | tum, illo die |
| hic ( <i>here</i> ) | „      | ibi           |

## § 128. Principal Sentence.—Mood and Tense.

1. **Direct Statements in Indic.** become *Indirect Statements*, i.e. the Subject *Accus.* and Verb *Infinitive*. For Tense see § 63.

[Direct Statements in **Subjunct.** (i.e. the Apodosis to Condit. Clause) will also pass into **Acc. and Infin.** See § 130.]

2. **Direct Questions in Indic.**

- (a) *Real Questions* (i.e. in 2nd Person) pass into the **Subjunct.** according to the ordinary Rules for *Indirect Question* (§§ 69 and 70).

quid vis? becomes  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quid velit (Prim.)} \\ \text{quid vellet (Hist.)} \end{array} \right.$

- (b) *Rhetorical Questions* (i.e. in 1st and 3rd Persons) are treated as Statements and pass into **Accus. and Infin.** :

quid est turpius? becomes quid esse turpius.

[Direct Questions in **Subjunct.** (i.e. Apodosis to Condit. Clause) remain in **Subjunctive**. Tense, etc., see § 130.]

3. **Direct Commands in Imperative** (or **Subjunct.**) become *Indirect Commands in Subjunct.*, Pres., or Imperf., acc. to Sequence. See § 74.

*N.B.* 'ut' (not 'ne') is usually omitted in Continuous Or. Obl.

discedite } becomes  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{discedant or discederent} \\ \text{let them depart} \end{array} \right.$   
depart }

ne dixeris } becomes  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ne dicat or ne diceret} \\ \text{let him not say} \end{array} \right.$   
do not say }

[A wish expressed in Direct Speech by **Subjunct.** may be thrown into the **Indirect** form, as follows:

Moriar = *may I die*, becomes Se velle mori.]

## § 129. Dependent Clauses.

These will naturally become **Suboblique** (§ 123, and Exceptions, § 125) in *Orat. Obl.*, and the verb (if *Indic.*) will become **Subjunctive**. Tenses as follows :

*Direct.**Indirect.*

PRIMARY.

HISTORIC.

Pres. or Fut. becomes

Pres. Subj. Imperf. Subj.

Perf. or Fut. Perf. becomes

Perf. Subj. Pluperf. Subj.

Imperf. or Pluperf. remains in the same tense, but passes from *Indic.* to *Subjunct.*

When the Verb of the Clause is already *Subjunctive*, no change will occur in *Primary Sequence*. In *Historic Sequence* Pres. becomes Imperf., and Perfect becomes Pluperf., as above.

§ 130. Conditional Sentences in *Or. Obl.*

A. If the Apodosis Verb is *Indic.* or *Imperat.*, convert according to the ordinary rules, § 128.

B. If the Apodosis Verb is *Subjunctive* (§ 94, B), thus :

1. Pres. Si videam, rideam (*or* nonne rideam ?)
2. Imperf. Si viderem, riderem (*or* nonne riderem ?)
3. Plup. Si vidissem, risissem (*or* nonne risissem ?)

Statements will be converted as follows :

1. { Dicit, si videat } se risurum esse, *or*  
{ Dixit, si videret } fore ut (rideat) rideret.<sup>1</sup>
2. Dicit, dixit, si videret } se risurum fuisse *or*
3. Dicit, dixit, si vidisset } futurum fuisse ut rideret.

Questions will be converted as follows :

1. { Quaerit nonne, si videat, rideat.  
{ Quaesivit nonne, si videret, rideret.
2. Quaerit, quaesivit, nonne, si videret, rideret.
3. { Quaerit nonne, si vidisset, risurus fuerit.  
{ Quaesivit nonne, si vidisset, risurus fuisset.

*N.B.*—The Tense of the Clause follows the rule given in § 129.

<sup>1</sup> This construction *must* be used in *Passive* ; see § 64.

## SE, SUUS.

§ 131. The uses of *se* and *suus* may be arranged thus :

## I. Direct reference.

In the Princip. Sentence or *in any kind of Clause*  
*se, suus* = *himself, him, his*, etc., referring to the Sub-  
ject of that Sentence or Clause (p. 94 note).

Barbari *se suos*-que liberos defendunt.

Nuntiatum est [Ariovistum cum *suus* (A.'s) copiisadesse.]

Persuasit Castico [ut regnum in *sua* (C.'s) civitate occu-  
paret.]

## II. Oblique reference.

In certain kinds of Clauses [viz. Substantival, Final,  
and any Clause in which the Subjunctive indicates  
*purpose, prevention, alleged cause* : e.g. *dum, ante-*  
*quam* + Subj., § 91, *qui*, Causal, § 115, and *quod* virtual  
Suboblique, § 87, *b.*]

*SE, SUUS* (besides being used as in I.) may refer to  
the Subject of the Sentence on which the Clause  
*immediately depends*.

Ariovistus dixit [Gallos *sibi* (A.) bellum intulisse.]

Implorabant [ne *se* (*them*) in servitatem traderet.]

Ar. quaesivit [cur Caesar in *suas* (A.'s) possessiones  
veniret.]

Legio ei gratias egit [quod *se* (*the legion*) laudavisset.]

*N.B.* Direct and Obl. ref. may both occur in the same Clause.

Ariovistus a Caesare postulavit [ut e legatis *suus* (C.'s)  
aliquem ad *se* (A.) mitteret.]

## III. Suboblique reference.

In Suboblique Clauses (§ 123, besides being used as in  
I. and II., *SE, SUUS* may refer to the Subject of the  
Sentence on which the Clause *ultimately depends*—  
*i.e.* in Or. Obl. to the speaker.

Divitiacus dixit [neminem existimaturum (non *sua*  
(D.'s) voluntate factum).]

A. dixit [nos esse iniquos (quod in *suo* (A.'s) jure *se*  
(A.) interpellaremus).]

§ 132. In a Complex Sentence it is therefore possible for *se*, *suus* to be correctly used with reference to two and sometimes three different persons.

A. Principal Sentence.

B. <sup>1</sup> Dependent Clause (Substant. Final, etc. See § 131, II.)

C. <sup>1</sup> Suboblique Clause.

In A. *se*, *suus* = *him*, *his*, refers to the Subject of A.<sup>1</sup>

In B. *se*, *suus* = *him*, *his*, may refer to Subj. of B. or A.

In C. *se*, *suus* = *him*, *his*, may refer to Subj. of C. or A. or (if C. is Subst., etc.) to the Subject of B.

*Examples of Double and Treble Reference.*

Postulant [ut (si velit *suos* (*his own*) recipere) obsides SIBI (*to them*) remittat.]

Ariovistus dixit [magnam Caesarem injuriam facere (qui *suo* (C.'s) adventu vectigalia SIBI (A.) deteriora faceret).]

Caesar dixit [SIBI (C.) persuaderi (eum SUAM (C.'s) gratiam non repudiaturum)].

Ariovistus dixit, quod Caesar SIBI (A.) denuntiaret, SE (C.) Aduorum injurias non neglecturum, neminem SECUM (A.) sine *sua* (*nem.*) pernicie contendisse.

§ 133. In converting Direct to Indirect Speech,

*se*, *suus* remains *se*, *suus*,

*ego*, *meus* becomes *se*, *suus*,

*tu*, *tuus* becomes { *se*, *suus*, referring to Subject,  
*ille*, *illius*, *is*, *ejus*, otherwise.

e.g. Direct. Tu, Cicero, patriam tuam servavisti.

Indir. Dixit, Ciceronem patriam suam servavisse.

**Ipse.**

When confusion might be caused by a double reference, use *se*, *suus* for Direct, *ipse* for Oblique reference.

Caesar quaesivit cur de *sua* (*their own*) virtute aut de *ipsius* (C.'s) diligentia desperarent.

<sup>1</sup> *Se*, *suus* may refer (Direct Ref.) to some other word than the Subject where no ambiguity is caused:

Hannibalem sui cives ejecerunt.



## EXAMPLES OF CONVERSION.

Direct

to

Indirect.

*Ariovistus' words.*

'Transi Rhenum non mea sponte sed rogatus a Gallis : sedes habeo in Gallia ab ipsis concessas. Non ego Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum intulerunt.'

*Ariovistus' words to Caesar.*

Ne quem peditem ad colloquium adduxeris : vereor ne per insidias a te circumveniar : uterque cum equitatu veniat : alia ratione non veniam.'

*Caesar to the Helvetii.*

'Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res quas vos commemoravistis memoria teneo. Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod me invito iter per vim temptavistis, memoriam deponere possum.'

*Ariovistus to Caesar.*

'Ego prius in Galliam veni quam Pop. Romanus. Cur in meas possessiones venis?'

*Ariovistus (dicit) dixit :*

Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte sed rogatum a Gallis : sedes habere in G. ab ipsis concessas. Non se Gallis sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse.

*Ariovistus (postulat) postulavit :*

Ne quem peditem ad coll. (adducat) adduceret : vereri se, ne per insid. ab eo circum(veniatur) -veniretur : uterque cum equit. (veniat) veniret : alia ratione se non venturum.

*Caesar (respondet) respondit :*

Eo sibi minus dub. dari, quod eas res quas legati (commemoraverint) commemorassent memoria (teneat) teneret. Si vet. contum. oblivisci (velit) vellet, num etiam recent. injur., quod se invito iter per vim (temptaverint) temptassent, memoriam deponere posse.

*Ariovistus (dicit) dixit :*

Se prius in Galliam venisse quam Pop. Romanum. Cur in suas possessiones (veniat) veniret.

*Caesar to his soldiers.*

Si praeterea nemo sequetur, ego cum sola decima legione ibo, de qua non dubito.

*Caesar to Ariovistus.*

Si hoc ita feceris (Indic.), mihi perpetua amicitia tecum erit.

*Divitiacus to Caesar.*

Si quid ei [i.e. fratri meo] a te gravius acciderit (Indic. cum ego hunc locum amicitiae apud te teneam, nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum.

*Divitiacus to Caesar.*

Paucis annis omnes (Sequani) ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transibunt.

*Ariovistus to Caesar.*

Si quid mihi a te opus esset, ad te venissem.

*Caesar to Ariovistus.*

Primum ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum traduxeris: deinde obsides, quos habes ab Aeduis, redde.

*C. (dicit) dixit:*

Si praeterea nemo (sequatur) sequeretur, se cum sola dec. leg. iturum, de qua non (dubitet) dubitaret.

*C. (dicit) dixit:*

Si id ita (fecerit [Subj.]) fecisset, sibi perpetuam amicitiam cum eo futuram.

*Div. (dicit) dixit:*

Si quid ei a Caesare gravius (acciderit [Subj.]) accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum (teneat) teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum.

*Div. (dicit) dixit:*

Futurum esse paucis annis ut omnes Gall. fin. (pellantur) pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rh. (transeant) transirent.

*A. (dicit) dixit:*

Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset sese ad eum venturum fuisse.

*C. (postulat) postulavit:*

Primum ne quam multitud. hom. amplius trans Rh. (traducat), traduceret, deinde obsides, quos (habeat) haberet ab Aeduis (reddat) redderet.

# VOCABULARY

## References:

§ are to the Appendix ; L.P. are to the Shorter Latin Primer.

- abandon* (*hope*), de-pon-o, -ĕre, -posu-i, -posit-um (§ 3).  
*abandoned* (i.e. *wicked*), perdit-us, -a, -um.  
*abide*, mane-o, -re, mansi, mans-um (2).  
*ability*, ingeni-um, -i, n.  
*able*, *am*, possu-m, posse, potu-i. § 5. L.P. 100. (§ 48.  
*abundā*, abundo, abundare, (1),  
*about* (= *concerning*), de, Prep. + Abl.; (= *nearly*), circiter, Adv.  
*above*, supra, Adv. and Prep. + Acc.  
*abstain*, abs-tineo, -tinĕre, -tinui, -tentum (2). § 41.  
*accept*, ac-cipio, -cipĕre, -cepi, -ceptum (3).  
*accident*, by, casu.  
*accomplish*, con-ficio, -ficĕre, -feci, -fectum (5). L.P. 98.  
*accord*, sponte meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, etc.  
*account*, on *account* of, propter or ob, Prep. + Acc.  
*accuse*, accuso, accusa-re (1). § 44.  
*accuser*, accusator, -is, m.  
*accustomed*, am, sole-o, -re, solit-us sum (2). § 5.  
*acquire*, nancisc-or, -i, nactus. Dep. (3).  
*acquit*, absolv-o, -ĕre, -i, absolut-um (3). § 44.  
*across*, trans, Prep. + Acc.  
*act*, Vb. ag-o, -ĕre, eg-i, act-um (3). Noun, act-a, -orum, n. pl.  
*admirably*, egregie.  
*admire*, admiror (1). Dep.
- adopt*, in-eo, -ire, -ii, -it-um (4).  
*adorn*, orno, orna-re (1).  
*advance*, pro-gredi-or, -gredi (Inf.), -gressus. Dep. (3). L.P. 98.  
*adverse*, advers-us, -a, -um.  
*adversity*, res adversae, pl.  
*advice*, by—of. See § 23.  
*advise*, mone-o, -re, monu-i, monit-um (2). § 76.  
*affair*, res, rei, f.  
*afford*, praebeo (2).  
*afraid* (of), am, vere-or, -ri, verit-us sum. Dep. (2). (+ Acc. or Clause. § 75, e.)  
*Africa*, -ae, f.  
*after*, post, Prep. + Acc.; also Adv. § 34; postquam, Con-junct. § 90.  
*afterwards*, postea, Adv. See § 34.  
*again*, rursus, iterum, Adv.  
*against*, contra, Prep. + Acc.  
*age*, aetas, aetatis, f.  
*ago*, abhinc, Adv. § 34.  
*agreeable*, jucund-us, -a, -um.  
*agreed*, it is, constat. § 61.  
*agriculture*, agricultur-a, -ae, f.  
*aim at*, pet-o, -ĕre, petiv-i, petit-um (3). § 4.  
*Alcibiad-es*, -is, m.  
*all*, omn-is, -e. Adj., like tristis.  
*allow*, patior, pati, passus. Dep. (3). § 76.  
*allowed*, am, licet mihi, tibi, etc., § 30.  
*ally*, soci-us, -i, m.  
*alone*, sol-us, -a, -um.  
*Alps*, Alp-es, -ium, f.

*already*, jam, Adv.  
*also*, etiam.  
*although*. § 98.  
*altogether*, omnino, Adv.  
*always*, semper, Adv.  
*am*, sum, esse, fui.  
*ambassador*, legat-us, -i, m.  
*ambition*, regni cupidit-as, -atis, f.  
*among*, inter, Prep. + Acc.; apud, Prep. + Acc.  
*ancestors*, major-es, -um, m. 3rd Dec. pl.  
*anchor*, ancor-a, -ae, f.  
*ancient*, antiqu-us, -a, -um.  
*Ancon-a*, -ae, f. (town).  
*and*, et, -que.  
*anger*, ira, -ae, f.  
*angry*, am, succens-eo, -ēre, -ui, -um (2). § 48. irasc-or, -i, iratus. Dep. (3). § 48.  
*angered* } irat-us, -a, -um.  
*angry* }  
*announce*, nuntio, nuntia-re (1).  
*answer*, respon-deo, -dēre, -di, -sum (2).  
*Antoni-us*, -i, m.  
*anxiety*, sollicitudo, -tudinis, f.  
*anxious*, sollicit-us, -a, -um.  
*any*. § 50.  
*any longer*, diutius, Adv.  
*appear*, vide-or, -ri, vis-us sum (2). § 11.  
*appearance*, speci-es, -ei, f.  
*applause*, plaus-us, -ūs, m.  
*appoint*, constitu-o, -ēre, -i, -tum (3). § 11.  
*approach*, Vb. appropinquo (1). Noun, advent-us, -ūs, m.  
*are*, Present of 'Sum' (I am).  
*argue*, disputo, disputa-re (1).  
*Ariovist-us*, -i, m.  
*arise*, orior, oriri (Inf.), ortus. Dep. (4). L.P. 98.  
*arm*, Vb. armo, arma-re (1).  
*arms*, arma, armorum, n., 2nd Decl. pl.  
*army*, exercit-us-, ūs, m.  
*arrest*, comprehend-o, -ēre, -i, -prehensum (3).  
*arrival*, advent-us, -ūs, m.  
*arrive*, per-vēni-o, -venire, -ven-i, -vent-um (4). Followed by ad (= at) + Acc.

*arrow*, sagitt-a, -ae, f.  
*art*, ars, art-is, f.  
*as*, § 102, 103.  
*as great as* } § 103.  
*as many as* }  
*as long as*. § 91, c. A. i.  
*as often as* } § 90.  
*as soon as* }  
*ascend*, ascend-o, -ēre, -i, ascens-um (3).  
*ascertain*, co-gnosce-o, -gnosce-re, -gnovi, -gnitum (3).  
*ashamed*, pudet me, te, etc. See § 30.  
*Asi-a*, -ae, f.  
*ask*, rogo, roga-re (1). § 76 and 10  
*as long as*, dum, quamdiu. § 90.  
*assemble*, Trans. cog-o, -ēre, coegi, coactum (3). Intr. con-venio (4).  
*assign*, attribu-o, -ēre, -i, -tum (3).  
*assistance*, auxili-um, -i, n. § 11.  
*as soon as*, simul ac. § 90.  
*at*. § 37.  
*Athens*, Athen-ae, -arum, f. pl., 1st Decl. (town).  
*at last*, tandem } Adv.  
*at length*, tandem }  
*atone*, expi-o, expia-re (1).  
*attack*, Vb. oppugno, oppugna-re (1). Noun, impet-us, -ūs, m.; oppugna-tio, -tionis, f.  
*attain*, per-veni-o, -re, -veni, -ventum (4). With ad + Acc.  
*attempt*, Vb. conor, cona-ri. Dep. (1). § 5. Noun, conatus, -ūs, m.  
*attention* (pay), dare operam. Dative.  
*attentively*, attente.  
*attract*, ad-duc-o, -duc-ēre, -dux-i, -duct-um (3).  
*audacity*, audaci-a, -ae, f.  
*authority*, auctorit-as, -atis, f.  
*avarice*, avaritia, -ae, f.  
*avoid*, vito, vita-re (1).  
*await*, exspecto, exspectare (1).  
*back*, terg-um, -i, n.  
*baggage*, impediment-a, -orum, n., 2nd Decl. pl.  
*banish*, ex-pell-o, -ēre, -pul-i, -puls-um (3).

- bank*, rip-a, -ae, f.  
*barbarian*, barbar-us, -i, m.  
*battle*, proeli-um, -i, n.  
*be*, sum, esse, fu-i. L.P. 81. § 11.  
*bear*, fer-o, ferre, tuli, latum. L.P. 101.  
*beast (wild)*, fer-a, -ae, f.  
*beat*, supero, supera-re (1).  
*beautiful*, pul-cher, -chra, -chrom.  
*because*. See § 86.  
*because of*, propter, Prep. + Acc.  
*become*, fio, fieri, fact-us sum. L.P. 105.  
*bed*, lectul-us, -i, m.  
*bee*, ap-is, -is, f.  
*before*, ante, Prep. + Acc.; antea (and ante), Adv. (see § 34); priusquam, Conj. (§ 91, d).  
*beg*, or *beg for*, pet-o, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum (3). § 76.  
*begin*, in-cipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum (3). L.P. 98. § 5. coepi (Perfect). L.P. 106.  
*beginning*, initi-um, -i, n.  
*behalf (on . . . of)*, pro, Prep. + Abl.  
*behave*, ger-o, -ere, gess-i, gestum (3), with Reflexive Pron. me, te, se, etc.  
*behead*, securi per-cut-i-o, -ere, -cussi, -cussum (3). Lit. 'strike with an axe.'  
*behind*, post, Prep. + Acc.  
*behold*, con-spic-i-o, -ere, -spex-i, -spect-um (3). L.P. 98.  
*Belg-ae*, -arum, plur. 1st. Decl. m.  
*believe*, cred-o, -ere, credid-i, credit-um (3). Dative, § 8. Believe that . . . Acc. and Inf. § 61.  
*below*, infra, Prep. + Acc. (and Adv.).  
*benefit*, benefici-um, -i, n.  
*besech*, obsecro (1). § 76.  
*besiege*, ob-side-o, -sidere, -sedi, -sessum (2).  
*betake*, re-cip-i-o, -cipere, -cep-i, -cept-um (3). L.P. 98.  
 —, con-fero, -ferre, -tuli.  
*betray*, pro-do, -dere, -didi, -ditum (3).  
*better*, Adj. meli-or, -us (Comp. of bonus). L.P. 49. Adv. melius.  
*between*, inter, Prep. + Acc.  
*beware*. § 76.  
*bid*, jube-o, -re, juss-i, juss-um (2). § 76.  
*bind*, vinci-o, -re, vinxi, vinctum (4).  
*bird*, av-is, -is, f.  
*bitter*, acer-bus, -a, -um.  
*black*, nig-er, -ra, -rum.  
*blame*, culpo, culpa-re (1). § 124.  
*blind*, caec-us, -a, -um.  
*blood*, san-guis, -guinis, m.  
*blot out*, dele-o, -re, -vi, -tum (2).  
*board (go on)*, conscend-o, -ere, -i, conscensum (3).  
*bold*, audax, Gen. audac-is.  
*bond*, vincul-um, -i, n.  
*bone*, os, oss-is, n.  
*book*, liber, libri, m.  
*booty*, praed-a, -ae, f.  
*born (am)* nasc-or, -i, natus sum. Dep. (3). § 45.  
*borne*. See bear.  
*both . . . and*, et . . . et. Both = each of two, uterque. See each.  
*bought*. See buy.  
*bound (i.e. enclose)*, con-tine-o, -tinere, -tinu-i, -tent-um (2).  
*bound*, participle of 'bind.'  
*bow*, arc-us, ūs, m.  
*boy*, puer, pueri, m.  
*brave*, fort-is, -e (like tristis).  
*bravely*, fortiter (Adv.).  
*break*, fraug-o, -ere, freg-i, fract-um (3).  
*break in*, ir-rump-o, -ere, -rup-i, -rupt-um (3). Usually with in + Acc.  
*break through*, per-rump-o, -ere, -rupi, -rupt-um (3).  
*bribery*, ambit-us, -ūs, m.  
*bridge*, pons, pont-is, m.  
*briefly*, breviter.  
*bring*, affero, afferre, at-tul-i, allat-um. L.P. 101.  
*bring back (thing)*, refero, referre, rettuli, relatum. L.P. 101.  
*bring back (person)*, reduc-o, -ere, -duxi, -ductum (3).  
*bring upon*, in-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum. § 46, i.  
*Britain*, Britanni-a, -ae, f.

*broken.* See *break*.  
*brother, frater, fratris, m.*  
*brought.* See *bring*.  
*Brundisi-um, -i (town).*  
*build, aedifico, aedifica-re (1).*  
*building, aedifici-um, -i, n.*  
*burden, onus, oneris, n.*  
*burn (Transit.), incend-o, -ĕre, -i, incens-um (3).*  
*burn (Intransit.), arde-o, -re, ars-i, ars-um (2). § 3.*  
*burst forth, e-rumpo, -ĕre, -rupi, -ruptum (3).*  
*bury, sepeli-o, -re, -vi, sepult-um (4).*  
*business, negoti-um, -i, n.*  
*busy, or busied, occupat-us, -a, -um.*  
*but, sed.* See also § 118.  
*buy, em-o, -ĕre, em-i, empt-um (3).*  
*by.* See § 38.

*Caesar, Caesaris, m.*  
*Caius, Caii, m.*  
*calamity, calamit-as, -atis, f.*  
*call, appello, appella-re (1). § 11.*  
*voco, voca-re (1).*  
*call-together, convoco (1).*  
*calm, tranquillit-as, -at-is, f.*  
*calmly, aequo animo. § 48.*  
*calmness, with, aequo animo. § 48.*  
*camp, castr-a, -orum, n. pl. 2nd Dec.*  
*can, possum, posse, potu-i. L.P. 100.*  
*cannot, 'non' with 'possum.'*  
*captive, captiv-us, -i, m.*  
*capture.* See *take*.  
*Capu-a, -ae (town), f.*  
*care, Noun, cura, -ae, f.*  
*care, take, video (2), operam dare (1). § 76.*  
*carry, porto, porta-re (1); carry a law, fero.*  
*carry back, refero, referre, rettul-i, relat-um.*  
*carry off, au-fero, -ferre, abstuli, ablatum.*  
*carry on, ger-o, -ĕre, gess-i, gest-um (3).*  
*Carthage, Carthag-o, -inis, f. (town).*  
*case, caus-a, -ae, f.; since this is the case, § 86.*  
*cast away (2) ab-jic-i-o, -ĕre, -jec-i, -jectum (3). L.P. 98.*

*Catilina, Catilina, -ae, m.*  
*cattle, pecus, pecoris, n.*  
*cause, causa, -ae, f.*  
*cavalry, equitatus, -ūs, m.; or pl. of eques, equitis, m., horseman.*  
*cease, desin-o, -ĕre, desi-i, desitum (3).*  
*centurion, centurio, centurion-is, m.*  
*certain, quidam, quaedam, quod-dam.*  
*chain, caten-a, -ae, f., vincul-um, -i, n.*  
*chance (= accident), cas-us, -ūs, m.; (= opportunity) facultas, -tatis, f.*  
*change (Transit.), muto (1). § 3.*  
*charge, Noun, impet-us, -ūs, m.*  
*Verb (= to attack), impetum facere; (= to command) mando (1). § 76; (= to accuse), accuso (1).*  
*chariot, curr-us, -ūs, m.*  
*chief, princeps, princip-is, m*  
*children, liber-i, -orum, pl. 2nd Decl.*  
*choose, delig-o, -ĕre, deleg-i, delect-um (3).*  
*Cicero, Ciceronis, m.*  
*circumstance, res, rei, f.*  
*citadel, arx, arc-is, f.*  
*citizen, civ-is, -is, m.*  
*city, urbs, urbis, f.*  
*clad. See clothe.*  
*clear, clar-us, -a, -um.*  
*close, claud-o, -ĕre, clausi, claus-um (3).*  
*clothe, vesti-o (4).*  
*cohort, cohors, -hortis, f.*  
*cold, frigus, frigor-is, n.*  
*collect, cog-o, -ĕre, coeg-i, coact-um (3).*  
*column, agmen, agmin-is, n.*  
*come, veni-o, veni-re, ven-i, vent-um (4)*  
*come together, convenio, etc. (like veni-o.*  
*come to pass, fio, fieri, factus sum.*  
*See also § 66.*  
*coming, Noun, advent-us, -ūs, m.*  
*command, Vb. impero (1). § 76.*  
*Noun, juss-us, -ūs, m.*  
*am-in-command of, prae-sum, -esse, fui. + Dat.*

*commit*, com-mitt-o, -ĕre, -mis-i, -miss-um (3).  
*common*, commun-is, -e.  
*companion*, comes, comit-is, m.  
*compare*, comparo (1); confero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum. § 48.  
*compel*, cog-o, -ĕre, coeg-i, coact-um (3). § 76.  
*complain*, quer-or, -i, questus. Dep. (3).  
*complete*, confici-o, -ficĕre, -feci, -fect-um (3). L.P. 98.  
*comrade*, soci-us, -i, m., comes, comit-is, m.  
*conceal*, celo (1).  
*concerns*, it, refert. § 30.  
*conclude*, confic-i-o, -ficĕre, -feci, -fectum (3). L.P. 98.  
*condemn*, condemno (1). § 44. to death, capitis.  
*confess*, confite-or, -ri, -fessus. Dep. (2).  
*confidence*, have, confid-o, -ĕre, fisis sum. Semi-Dep. (3). § 42.  
*confine*, tene-o, -re, tenu-i (2).  
*conquer*, vinc-o, -ĕre, vic-i, vict-um (3).  
*conscript*, conscript-us, -a, -um.  
*consent*, consens-us, -ūs, m.  
*consider*, puto, puta-re (1), habe-o, habĕre, habu-i (2).  
*console*, consolor, -solari (1). Dep.  
*conspiracy*, conjuratio, -nis, f.  
*conspirators*, conjurat-i, -orum, m.  
*conspire*, conjuro (1).  
*construct*, constru-o, -ĕre, -i, -struct-um (3).  
*consul*, consul, consul-is, m.  
*consulship*, consulat-us, -ūs, m.  
 See also § 23 and § 42, N.B.  
*consume*, consum-o, -ĕre, -sumpsi, -sumptum (3).  
*contend*, contend-o, -ĕre, -i, -tent-um (3).  
*contented*, content-us, -a, -um.  
*contrive*, effic-i-o, -ficĕre, -fec-i, -fect-um. § 76.  
*converse*, col-loqu-or, -i, -locutus. Dep. (3).  
*convict*, convinc-o, -ĕre, -vici, -vict-um (3). § 44, vi.  
*convince*, persuade-o, -re, -suasi, -suasum. Dat. § 75, g.

*copper*, aes, aeris, n.  
*Corinth*, Corinth-us, -i, m. (town).  
*corn*, frument-um, -i, n.  
*could*, past tense of 'possum.'  
*council*, concili-um, -i, n.  
*country* (= fatherland), patri-a, -ae, f.; (opposed to 'town') rus, rur-is, n. Loc. ruri. § 36.  
*courage*, virtus, virtut-is, f.  
*course*, curs-us, -ūs, m.  
*cover*, teg-o, -ĕre, tex-i, tect-um (3).  
*cowardice*, ignavi-a, -ae, f.  
*cowardly*, ignav-us, -a, -um.  
*create*, cre-o, crea-re (1).  
*crime*, scelus, sceleris, n.  
*Crass-us*, -i, m.  
*crop*, seges, seget-is, f.  
*cross*, trans-eo, -ire, -ivi, -itum. L.P. 102.  
*cruel*, crudel-is, -e.  
*cruelty*, crudelit-as, -atis, f.  
*crush*, opprim-o, -ĕre, -press-i, -press-um (3).  
*cry*, clamor, clamoris, m.  
*cry-out*, exclamo (1).  
*cultivate*, col-o, -ĕre, colu-i, cult-um (3).  
*custom*, consuetudo, -tudin-is, f.; mos, moris, m.  
*cut-down*, rescind-o, -ĕre, -scid-i, -sciss-um (3).  
*cut off*, abs-ci-do, -dere, -di, -ssum (3).  
*dance*, salto, salta-re (1).  
*danger*, pericul-um, -i, n.  
*dangerous*, periculos-us, -a, -um.  
*dare*, aude-o, audĕ-re, ausus sum. L.P. 92.  
*dart*, tel-um, -i, n.  
*daughter*, fili-a, -ae, f.  
*dawn*, at: say 'at the first light,' lux, luc-is, f.  
*day*, dies, diei, m.; to-day, hodie.  
*daybreak*, at: say 'at the first light.' § 34.  
*dear*, car-us, -a, -um.  
*death*, mors, mort-is, f.  
*deceive*, fallo, -ĕre, fefelli, falsum.  
*decide*. See determine.  
*declare*, declaro, declara-re (1); judicio (1).

- declare war (on)*, indicere bellum.  
 Dat. of Person.
- decree*, Vb. decern-o, -ĕre, -crev-i, -cretum (3). § 73. Noun, senatus-consultum, -i, n.
- deed*, fact-um, -i, n.
- deep*, alt-us, -a, -um.
- defeat*, supero (1).
- defend*, defend-o, -ĕre, -i, defens-um (3).
- delay*, Noun, mor-a, -ae, f. Verb, moror, mora-ri. Dep. (1).
- deliberation*, Gerund of delibero (1).
- deliver*, libero (1).
- demand*, postulo (1). § 76.
- deny*, nego (1).
- depart*, disced-o, -ĕre, -cessi, -cess-um (3).
- depend on*: Passive of pono (*place*), with in + Abl.
- deprive*, spolio (1). § 45.
- desert*, deser-o, -ĕre, -ui, -tum (3).
- deserter*, profug-us, -i, m.
- deserve*, mere-o (2); or mere-or, Dep. (2).
- deserved*, merit-us, -a, -um.
- design*, consili-um, -i, n.
- desire*, Noun, cupido, cupidin-is, f. Verb, cupi-o, cupĕre, cupiv-i, cupit-um (3). § 5, c. L.P. 98.
- desirous*, cupid-us, -a, -um.
- desist*, desist-o, -ĕre, destit-i, destit-um (3). § 41.
- despair*, despero, despera-re (1).
- despatch*, mitto (3).
- despise*, spern-o, -ere, spre-v-i, spret-um (3).
- destroy*, dele-o, -re, -vi, -tum (2).
- destruction*, exiti-um, -i, n.
- detain*, detine-o, -tinĕ-re, -tinu-i, -tent-um (2).
- determine (on)*, constitu-o, -ĕre, -i, -tum (3). § 5.
- Diana*, Dian-a, -ae, f.
- dictator*, dictator, -is, m.
- did*, Aorist of 'do,' or (as Auxiliary) mark of Aorist Tense. Ex. 43.
- die*, mori-or, mor-i, mortuus sum. Dep. (3). L.P. 98.
- differ*, differo, -ferre, dis-tuli, dilatum.
- difficult*, difficil-is, -e (like tristis). *difficulty*, difficul-tas, -tat-is, f.
- diligence*, diligentia, -ae, f.
- diligently*, diligenter.
- direction*, pars, partis, f.
- disaster*, calamitas, -tat-is, f.
- discover*, reperi-o, -re, repper-i, repert-um (4).
- disease*, morb-us, -i, m.
- disembark*, egredi-or, egred-i, egress-us. Dep. (3).
- disgraceful*, turp-is, -e.
- disgracefully*, turpiter.
- dismiss*, di-mitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum (3).
- display*, prae-sto, -stare, -st.iti, -stitum (1).
- distant (be)*, ab-sum, ab-esse, ab-fui.
- distant*, longinqu-us, -a, -um.
- district*, regio, region-is, f.
- disturb*, turbo, turba-re (1); com-move-o, -re, -mov-i, mot-um (2).
- disturbance*, tumult-us, -ūs, m.
- ditch*, foss-a, -ae, f.
- divide*, divid-o, -ĕre, -vid-i, -vis-um (3).
- do*, faci-o, fac-ĕre, fec-i, fact-um (3). L.P. 98.
- doctor*, medic-us, -i, m.
- doubt*, Vb. dubito, dubita-re (1). § 118. Noun, dubi-um, -i, n. *have no doubt*, nihil dubito.
- doubtful*, dubi-us, -a, -um.
- draw (sword)*, string-o, -ĕre, strinx-i, strict-um (3).
- draw up*, instru-o, -ĕre, -strux-i, -struct-um (3).
- drink*, bib-o, -ĕre, -i, -itum (3).
- drive (out)*, expell-o, -ĕre, -puli, -puls-um (3).
- drive (back)*, re-pello, etc.
- dust*, pulv-is, -eris, m.
- duty*. See § 44.
- dwell (or dwell in)*, incol-o, -ĕre, -colu-i, -cult-um (3).
- dwelling*, domicili-um, -i, m.
- each (of two)*, uterque, utraque, utrumque; *(of more than two)*, quisque, quaeque, quodque (quicque).
- each other*, alius alium.
- eager*, cupidus, -a, -um (Gen.).
- earth*, terr-a, -ae, f.



*easily*, facile.  
*eight*, octo.  
*eighteen*, duodeviginti.  
*either* . . . or, aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel.  
*elated*, elatus. Particip. of effero.  
*elegance*, eleganti-a, -ae, f.  
*eloquence*, eloquenti-a, -ae, f.  
*eloquent*, eloquens, eloquent-is.  
*empty*, vacu-us, -a, -um.  
*encourage*, hortor, horta-ri. Dep. (1). § 76.  
*end*, finis, -is, m.  
*endeavour*, conor, conari, conat-us sum. Dep. (1). § 5.  
*endowed*, praedit-us, -a, -um.  
*endure*, per-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum.  
*enemy*, host-is, -is, m.  
*enjoy*, fruor, frui, fruitus sum. Dep. (3). § 9. Abl.  
*enough*, satis. § 13.  
*enrol*, con-scrib-o, -ēre, -scrips-i, script-um (3).  
*enter*, intro (1).  
*entirely*, omnino.  
*entreat*, obsecro (1). § 76.  
*entrust*, com-mitt-o, -ēre, -mis-i, miss-um (3).  
*envoy*, legat-us, -i, m.  
*envy*, invid-e-o, -re, -vid-i, -vis-um (2). Dat. § 8.  
*equal*, aequ-us, -a, -um.  
*escape*, ef-fugi-o, -fug-ēre, -fug-i (3). L.P. 98.  
*especially*, praecipue.  
*even*, etiam; *not even*, ne . . . quidem. § 54.  
*evening*, vesper, vesp̄eris, m.  
*ever*, unquam.  
*everlasting*, sempitern-us, -a, -um.  
*every*, omn-is, -e.  
*every year*, quotannis.  
*evil*, Adj. mal-us, -a, -um. Noun, mal-um, -i, n.  
*example*, exempl-um, -i, n.  
*excellent*, optim-us, -a, -um.  
*excellently*, egregie.  
*exercise*, exerce-o (2).  
*exertions*, opera, -ae, f. singular.  
*exhausted*, confect-us, -a, -um.  
*exhort*, hortor, horta-ri, hortat-us sum. Dep. (1). § 76.  
*exile*, exili-um, -i, n.

*expel*, expell-o, -ēre, -puli, -puls-um (3).

*expense*, sumpt-us, -ūs, m.

*experience*, us-us, -ūs, m.

*explain*, ex-pon-o, -ēre, -posu-i, -positum (3).

*expect*, exspecto (1).

*extend*, pate-o (2).

*eye*, ocul-us, -i, m.

*fact*, res, rei, f.

*fail*, de-fic-i-o, -ficēre, -feci, -fect-um (3). L.P. 98.

*fair*, idone-us, -a, -um.

*faithful*, fidel-is, -e.

*fall*, cad-o, -ēre, cecidi, casum (3).

*false*, fals-us, -a, -um.

*far*, procul } *to be far (off)*,

*far off*, procul } procul abesse.

*far*: so far from . . . that. § 66, 83.

*father*, pater, patris, m.

*fatherland*, patri-a, -ae, f.

*fatigue*, lassitudo, -tudin-is, f.

*favour*, fave-o, -re, favi, faut-um (2).

Dat. § 8.

*favourable*, idone-us, -a, -um.

*fear*. Noun, timor, timor-is, m.

Vb. time-o, -re, timu-i (2);

vere-or, -ri. Dep. (2). § 75, e.

*fear*, for = lest. § 75, e.

*fearing*. See § 18.

*fellow-citizen*, civ-is, -is, m.

*ferocious*, fer-ox, -ocis.

*fertile*, fertil-is, -e (like tristis).

*few*, pauc-i, -ae, -a, pl. Adj.

*field*, ager, agri, m.

*fight*, pugno, pugna-re (1).

*fill*, re-pleo, -re, -plevi, -pletum (2).

*find*, in-veni-o, -ven-i, -vent-um (4).

*find out*, reper-i-o, -re, reper-i,

reper-um (4).

*finish*, confic-i-o, -ficēre, -fec-i, -fect-um (3). L.P. 98.

*fire*, ign-is, -is, m.

*firm*, firm-us, -a, -um.

*first*, Adj. prim-us, -a, -um. § 110.

Advb. primum.

*fit*, fitted, apt-us, -a, -um. § 39.

*five*, quinque.

*flank*, latus, lateris, n.

- flee*, fugi-o, fug-ĕre, fug-i, fugit-um (3). L.P. 98.
- fleet*, class-is, -is, f.
- flight*, fug-a, -ae, f.
- fling*, pro-jic-i-o, -ere, -jeci, -jectum (3).
- flower*, flos, flor-is, m.
- fly*. See *flee*.
- fly away*, avolo (1).
- fly out*, evolo, evola-re (1).
- fodder*, pabul-um, -i, n.
- foe*, hostis, -is, m.
- follow*, sequor, sequi, secut-us sum. Dep. (3).
- following day*, posterus dies. § 34.  
the following words or 'as follows' = haec.
- foolish*, stultiti-a, -ae, f.
- fond*, cupid-us, -a, -um.
- food*, cib-us, -i, m.
- foolish*, stult-us, -a, -um.
- foot*, pes, ped-is, m.
- foot-soldier*, ped-es, pedit-is, m.
- for*. § 40.
- for a long while*, diu, Adv.
- forbid*, veto, veta-re, vetu-i, vetit-um (1). § 76, B.
- force*, Noun, vis (Ac. vim, Ab. vi), f.  
Verb, cog-o, -ĕre, coeg-i, co-act-um (3).
- forces* (i.e. troops), copi-ae, -arum. 1st Decl. pl. f.
- ford*, vad-um, -i, n.
- forest*, silv-a, -ae, f.
- forget*, oblivisc-or, -i, oblit-us sum. Dep. (3). § 7.
- forgetful*, oblitus, Genit.
- form* (a plan), in-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum.
- former*, superior, -is; *the former* . . . *the latter*; ille . . . hic.
- formerly*, olim, quondam.
- fortifications*, munitio, -nis, f.
- fortify*, muni-o (4).
- forum*, for-um, -i, n.
- forward* (*send*), praemitto (3).
- found* (i.e. to build), cond-o, -ĕre, condid-i, condit-um (3). = *did find*. See *find*.
- four*, quattuor.
- fourteenth*, quartus decimus.
- fourth*, quart-us, -a, -um.
- free*, Adj. lib-er, -era, -erum.
- free*, Verb, libero (1).
- friend*, amic-us, -i, m.
- friendly*, amic-us, -a, -um.
- friendship*, amicitia, -ae, f.
- fright*, pav-or, -oris, m.
- frighten*, terre-o (2).
- from* (= out of), e or ex + Abl. (= away from), a or ab + Abl. § 41.
- fruit*, fruct-us, -ūs (4), m.
- full*, plen-us, -a, -um. § 44.
- Furies*, Furi-ae, -arum, f. pl.
- further*, Adj. ulterior, -is; Adv. longius.
- gain*, Vb. adipisc-or, -i, adeptus. Dep. (3). Noun, lucr-um, -i.
- garment*, vest-is, -is, f.
- garrison*, praesidi-um, -i, n.
- gate*, port-a, -ae, f.
- Gaul* (country), Galli-a, -ae, f.
- Gauls* (people), Gall-i, -orum. 2nd Decl. pl.
- general*, imperator, -is, m.
- generally*, plerumque. Adv.
- German*, German-us, -a, -um.
- get*, nancisc-or, -i, nactus. Dep. (3).
- get-possession-of*, poti-or, -ri, -tus sum. Dep. (4). § 9.
- gift*, don-um, -i, n.
- girl*, puell-a, -ae, f.
- give*, do, da-re, ded-i, dat-um (1).
- give up*, trad-o, ĕre, -id-i, -it-um (3).
- gladly*, libenter.
- glory*, glori-a, -ae, f.
- go*, eo, i-re, iv-i, it-um; *going to* = about to, Fut. Particip.; *go away*, ab-eo, -ire, -ivi, -itum; *go on board*, conscend-o, -ĕre, -i, -scens-um (3); *go out*, ex-eo, -ire, -ivi, -itum; *go-on*, Passive of ger-o, -ĕre, gess-i, gest-um (3).
- go on board* } See *go*.
- go out* }
- god*, de-us, -i, m. L.P. 19.
- gold*, aur-um, -i, u.
- good*, bon-us, -a, -um.
- great*, magn-us, -a, -um.
- greatest*, maxim-us, -a, -um; summ-us, -a, -um.
- greatly*, magnopere.
- Greece*, Graeci-a, -ae, f.

*greedy*, avar-us, -a, -um.  
*Greek*, Graecus, -a, -um.  
*grief*, dolor, -is, m.  
*grievous*, grav-is, -e.  
*groan*, gem-o, -ère, -ui, -itum (3).  
*groan*, Noun, gemit-us, ūs, m.  
*ground* (i.e. position), loc-us, -i, m.  
*guard*, Noun, custod-is, m.;  
 Vb. custodi-o (4).  
*guardians*. See *guard*.  
*guilty*, nocens, -entis.

*halt*, con-sist-o, -ère, -stit-i, -stit-um  
 (3).  
*hand*, man-us, -ūs, f.  
*hand-down*, trad-o, -ère, -id-i, -it-um  
 (3).  
*Hannibal*, Hannibal, -is, m.  
*happen*, ac-cid-o, -ère, -i (3).  
 Dative. § 66.  
*happily*, beate.  
*happy*, beat-us, -a, -um.  
*harbour*, port-us, -us, m.  
*hard*, dur-us, -a, -um.  
*hardly*, vix.  
*harm*, detriment-um, -i, n.  
*has*. See Ex. 43.  
*hasten*, maturo (1). Infin. § 5 (c).  
 contend-o, -ère, -i (3).  
*hastily*, celeriter.  
*hatred*, odi-um, -i, n.  
*have*, habe-o (2); or use 'sum'  
 with Dat.: thus, 'I have a  
 book = est mihi liber.'  
*he*, usually included in Verb: if  
 expressed, ille or is.  
*head*, caput, capit-is, n.  
*hear*, audi-o (4).  
*heat*, aest-us, -ūs, m.  
*heavy*, grav-is, -e (like tristis).  
*height*, altitud-o, -inis, f.  
*Helen*, Helen-a, -ae.  
*help*, auxili-um, -i, n.  
*help, I cannot*. § 118.  
*Helvetii*, -orum, 2nd Decl. pl.  
*hem-in*, contine-o, -re, -tinu-i, -tent-  
 um (2).  
*hence*, hinc (Adv.).  
*her*. § 53.  
*Hercules*, -is, m.  
*here*, hic (Adv.).  
*herself*. § 52.  
*hesitate*, dubito, dubita-re (1). § 5.

*hide*, celo, cela-re (1).  
*high*, alt-us, -a, -um.  
*highly*, so = at so high a price. § 37.  
*highest*, summ-us, -a, -um.  
*hill*, coll-is, -is, m.  
*him*, Acc. Dat. etc. of is (or se).  
 § 52. L.P. 63.  
*himself*, Reflexive, se, L.P. 64;  
 Definitive, ipse, L.P. 64. See § 52.  
*hinder*, imped-io (4). § 119.  
*hindrance*, impediment-um, -i, n.  
*his*. § 53.  
*hither*, huc (Adv.).  
*hold*, tene-o (2).  
*hold out*, sustine-o, -re, -tinui, -tent-  
 um (2).  
*home*, (to) home, domum; at home,  
 domi; from home, domo. § 36.  
*honey*, mel, mell-is, n.  
*honour*, Noun, hon-or, honor-is, m.  
 Vb. honoro (1).  
*honourable*, decor-us, -a, -um.  
*hope*, Noun, spes, spei. f. Vb.  
 spero, spera-re (1). § 65, f.  
*horse*, equ-us, -i, m.  
*horseback, fight on*, ex equo  
 pugnare.  
*horseman*, eques, equit-is, m.  
*Hortensius*, -i, m.  
*hostage*, obses, obsid-is, m.  
*hostile*, inimic-us, -a, -um.  
*hour*, hor-a, -ae, f.  
*house*, dom-us, -ūs, f. L.P. 34.  
*how*, (= to what extent) quam  
 (Interrog. Adv.); (= in what  
 manner) quomodo (Interrog.  
 Adv.).  
*however*, tamen.  
*how long*, quamdiu (Interrog.  
 Adv.).  
*how-great*, quantus, -a, -um (Inter-  
 rog. Adj.).  
*how-many*, quot (Interrog. Adj.  
 indecl.).  
*human*, human-us, -a, -um.  
*humble*, humil-is, -e.  
*hunger*, fam-es, -is, f.  
*hurl*, conjic-i-o, -ère, -jec-i, -ject-um  
 (3). L.P. 98.

*I*, ego. L.P. 61

*idle*, ignav-us, -a, -um.

*if, si.* § 93. See also § 71, *f.*  
*ignorant*, Adj. ignar-us, -a, -um ;  
*be ignorant of*, ignoro (1), Acc. ;  
*be ignorant that*, nescio (4).  
*ill*, aeger, aegra, aegrum.  
*image*, simulacr-um, -i, n.  
*immediately*, statim, extemplo ;  
 sine mora.  
*immortal*, immortal-is, -e (like  
 tristis).  
*implore*, obsecro (1). § 76.  
*important, it is*, interest. § 30.  
*impossible.* § 66, 118.  
*in, in*, Prep. + Abl. § 42. = *into*,  
 in + Acc.  
*in all directions.* § 42.  
*in appearance*, specie. § 42.  
*in order to.* § 79, a.  
*in truth*, re vera.  
*in vain*, frustra.  
*increase* (Trans.), auge-o, -re, auxi,  
 auctum (2).  
*increase* (Intrans.), cresc-o, -ère,  
 crevi, cretum (3).  
*incredible*, incredibil-is, -e (like  
 tristis).  
*indicate*, significo (1).  
*indication*, significatio, -nis, f.  
*industry*, industri-a, -ae, f.  
*inflame*, incend-o, -ère, -i, -cens-um  
 (3).  
*inflict*, sum-o, -ère, sumps-i, sumpt-  
 um (3). § 46.  
*influence*, auctorit-as, -at-is, f.  
*inform*, certiozem facere. } Ex. 51.  
*informed, am, certior fio.* }  
*inhabit*, incol-o, -ère, -ui (3).  
*inhabitant*, incola, -ae, m.  
*injure*, noceo (2). Dat. § 8.  
*injury*, injuri-a, -ae, f.  
*innocent*, innocens, -entis.  
*inquire*, quaer-o, -ère, quaesiv-i,  
 quaesit-um (3).  
*insolence*, insolenti-a, -ae, f.  
*instruct*, erudi-o (4).  
*intend*: say 'to have in mind,'  
 in animo habere + Infin.  
*into*, in, Prep. + Acc.  
*is, est.* 3rd Sing. Pres. of 'sum.'  
*island*, insul-a, -ae, f.  
*Italy*, Itali-a, -ae, f.  
*it is, est.*

*its.* See § 53.  
*itself.* § 52.

*join* (battle), committ-o, -ère, -misi,  
 -miss-um (3).  
*journey*, iter, itiner-is, n.  
*joy*, gaudi-um, -i, n.  
*judge*, Noun, judex, judic-is, m.  
 Verb, judico (1).  
*Julia*, Juli-a, -ae.  
*just*, just-us, -a, -um.

*keep*, tene-o (2), serva-re (1).  
*keep-silence*, tace-o (2).  
*kill*, oc-cid-o, -ère, -i, occis-um (3).  
*kindness*, benefici-um, -i, n.  
*king*, rex, régis, m.  
*kingdom*, regn-um, -i, n.  
*knight*, eques, equit-is, m.  
*know*, scio, scire, scivi, scitum (4).  
*knowledge*, scientia, -ae, f.

*labour*, labor, labor-is, m.  
*Labienus*, Labien-us, -i, m.  
*ladder*, scal-a, -ae, f.  
*lade*, onero (1).  
*land*, Noun, terr-a, -ae, f. (opp. to  
 'sea'); ager, agri, m. (= terri-  
 tory). Verb, Transit. ex-pon-o,  
 -ère, posu-i, -posit-um ; Intrans.  
 egred-i-or, egred-i, egress-us  
 sum, Dep. (3).  
*last*, ultim-us, -a, -um.  
*lately*, nuper.  
*laugh* (at), ride-o, -re, ris-i, ris-um  
 (2).  
*law*, lex, legis, f.  
*lawfully*, jure, Abl. of jus, juris, n.  
*lay aside*, de-pono, -ponère, -posu-i,  
 -posit-um (3).  
*lay upon*, im-pon-o, -ère, -posui,  
 -positum (3). § 46, i.  
*lay waste*, vasto, vasta-re (1).  
*lead*, duc-o, -ère, dux-i, duct-um  
 (3).  
*lead across*, trans-duco (3).  
*lead out*, educ-o, -ère, edux-i,  
 educt-um (3).  
*lead round*, circum-duco (3).  
*leader*, dux, duc-is, m.

*leap (down)*, de-sili-o, -silire, -silu-i, -sult-um (4).

*learn*, disco, -ēre, didic-i (3).

*learn (= find out)*, cog-nosc-o, -ēre, -novi, -nitum (3).

*learned*, doct-us, -a, -um.

*leave*, Vb. re-lingu-o, -ēre, -liqu-i, -lict-um (3). Noun (*permission*), veni-a, -ae.

*led*. See *lead*.

*left*. See *leave*.

*left (hand)*, sinistr-a, -ae, f. § 46.

*legate*, legat-us, -i, m.

*legion*, legio, legion-is, f.

*leisure*, oti-um, -i, n.

*Lentul-us*, -i, m.

*lest*, ne. § 78.

*let*, Pres. Subjunct. § 56, 57.

*let know*, certiore[m] facere.

*let-slip*, omitt-o, -ēre, omis-i, omis-s-um (3).

*letter*, epistol-a, -ae, f.; liter-ae, -arum, f. 1st Decl. pl.

*liberally*, liberaliter.

*liberty*, libertas, libertat-is, f.

*lie*, jace-o (2).

*lie-open*, pate-o, patu-i (2).

*life*, vit-a, -ae, f.

*light*, lux, luc-is, f.

*likely to*: use Fut. Participle.

*line*, aci-es, -ei, f.

*linger*, moror, mora-ri, morat-us.

Dep. (1).

*lion*, leo, leon-is, m.

*listen-to*, audi-o (4). § 4.

*literature*, liter-ae, -arum, f. 1st Decl. pl.

*little*, parv-us, -a, -um.

*live (= be alive)*, viv-o, -ēre, vix-i, vict-um (3); (=  *dwell*), habit-o, (1).

*living (= alive)*, viv-us, -a, -um.

*load*, onero (1).

*look for*, quaer-o, -ēre, quaesivi, quaesit-um (3).

*long*, Adj. long-us, -a, -um. Advb. diu.

*long ago*, jam pridem.

*lose*, amitt-o, -ēre, amis-i, amiss-um (3); perd-o, -ēre, perdid-i, perdit-um (3).

*loud*, clar-us, -a, -um.

*mad*, insan-us, -a, -um.

*magistrate*, magistrat-us, -ūs, m.

*Magnesia*, -ae, f. (town).

*mainland*, contin-ens, -entis, f.

*make*, fac-i-o, fac-ēre, fec-i, fact-um (3). L.P. 98.

*make war on*, bellum inferre + Dat. of person.

*man*, homo, homin-is, m. (often omitted): 'the man who,' is qui. § 107, b.

*manage*, ger-o, -ēre, gess-i, gest-um (3).

*many*, mult-us, -a, -um.

*march*, contend-o, -ēre, -i (3).

*march*, Noun, iter, itineris, n.

*marriage*, matrimoni-um, -i, n.

*marry*, a husband, nub-o, -ēre, nups-i, nupt-um (3). Dat. § 8. a wife, duc-o, -ēre, dux-i, duct-um (3). Acc.

*marsh*, palus, palud-is, f.

*Massilia*, -ae (town).

*master*, magist-er, -ri, m.

*matter*, res, rei, f.

*may*. See § 33.

*me*, Oblique Cases of ego.

*meanwhile*, interea.

*Mede-a*, -ae, f.

*meet*, oc-curr-o, ēre, -i, -cursum (3).

Dative. go to meet, obviam ire.

Dat. of Pers.

*mention*, memoro (1).

*merchant*, mercator, -is, m.

*Messana*, -ae, f. (town).

*messenger*, nunti-us, -i, m.

*method*, ratio, -nis, f.

*midday*, meridi-es, -ei, f.

*middle*, medi-us, -a, -um. § 45.

*might*. See § 33. (=  *strength*, pl. of vis: with all his might, summis viribus.)

*mile*, mille passus; miles, milia passuum. Ex. 44.

*military*, militar-is, -e.

*mind*, anim-us, -i, m.; mens, ment-is, f.

*mindful*, memor, -is.

*Minerv-a*, -ae, f.

*miss*, omitt-o, -ēre, omis-i, omis-s-um (3).

*mistaken*, am, Passive of fall-o, -ēre, fe-fell-i, fals-um (3).

*Mithridat-es*, -is, m.  
*moderate*, mediocr-is, -e.  
*money*, pecuni-a, -ae, f.  
*month*, mens-is, -is, m.  
*moon*, lun-a, -ae, f.  
*more* (in degree), Comparative degree, or magis (Adv.) ; (in quantity), plus, pluris (Adj. L.P. 51) ; (than followed by a number), amplius (Adv.).  
*moreover*, autem.  
*most* (in quantity), plurim-us, -a, -um ; (in degree), maxime or Superl. of Adj.  
*mother*, mater, matris, f.  
*mountain*, mons, mont-is, m.  
*move*, (Transit. § 3) move-o, move-re, mov-i, mot-um (2).  
*much*, Adj. mult-us, -a, -um. Adv. mult-um, *much*, followed by Comparative ; see § 16.  
*multitude*, multitudo, -tudinis, f.  
*murder*, caed-es, -is, f.  
*must*. § 27, 28, 29.  
*my*, mine, me-us, -a, -um.  
*myself*. § 52.

*name*, nomen, nomin-is, n.  
*nation*, gens, gent-is, f.  
*native-land*, patri-a, -ae, f.  
*nature*, natur-a, -ae, f.  
*nearer (any)*, propius, Adv.  
*nearest*, proxim-us, -a, -um.  
*nearly*, paene. See also § 118, a.  
*neglect*, ne-glig-o, -ere, -glex-i, -glect-um (3).  
*neighbourhood*, vicinitas, -tat-is, f.  
*neighbouring*, finitim-us, -a, -um.  
*neither*, Adj. neut-er, -ra, -rum.  
 Conj. nec (*neither*) . . . nec (*nor*). See Ex. 5.  
*never*, nunquam.  
*nevertheless*, nihilominus, tamen.  
*next*, proxim-us, -a, -um.  
*new*, nov-us, -a, -um.  
*news*, nunti-us, -i, m. ; fam-a, -ae, f. (singular).  
*night*, nox, noct-is, f.  
*ninth*, non-us, -a, -um.  
*no*, Adj. null-us, -a, -um ; *no one*, nemo, nemin-is. § 54.  
*noble*, nobil-is, -e.

*nobility*, nobilitas, -tatis, f.  
*nobody*, nemo, nemin-is. § 54.  
*noise*, strepit-us, -ūs, m.  
*no one*, nemo, nemin-is. § 54. *no one*, in Final Cl. § 79, b, and Indirect Comm. § 75, c.  
*nor*, nec, neque.  
*not*, non.  
*not yet*, nondum.  
*nothing*, nihil, indecl.  
*now (at the time of speaking)*, nunc ; (= *already*), jam.  
*number*, numer-us, -i, m.

*obey*, pare-o (2). Dative. § 8.  
*obscure*, obscur-us, -a, -um.  
*observe*, animad-vert-o, -ere, -vert-i, -vers-um (3).  
*obtain*, nancisc-or, -i, nact-us. Dep. (3).  
*occupy*, obtine-o, -re, -tinu-i, -tent-um (2).  
*of*, Genitive Case ; but see § 44, 45.  
*offer*, offer-o, offerre, obtul-i, oblat-um.  
*often*, saepe.  
*old age*, aetas, aetat-is, f. ; senect-us, -utis, f.  
*old-man*, senex, sen-is.  
*on*. § 46.  
*on account of*, propter, ob, Prep. + Acc.  
*on all sides*, undique (Adv.).  
*once (= formerly)*, olim ; *at once (= immediately)*, statim.  
*one*, unus, -a, -um ; *the one (of two)*, alter, -era, -erum.  
*one apiece*, singul-us, -a, -um.  
*on-foot*, pedibus (Abl. pl. of pes, pedis).  
*only*, solum, modo.  
*on this account*. § 46.  
*open*, aper-io, -ire, -ui, -tum (4).  
*opinion*, sententi-a, -ae, f. ; *in my opinion*, § 42, Respect.  
*opportunity*, oc-casio, -casion-is, f.  
*or*, aut, vel. See Ex. 55.  
*orator*, orator, -is, m.  
*order*, Vb. jube-o, -re, juss-i, juss-um (2). § 76. *in order to*, § 79, a.  
*ornament*, ornament-um, -i, n.

*other*, ali-us, -a, -ud. L.P. 69. *the other* (of two), alter, -a, -um. L.P. 69.

*ought*, debe-o (2), oportet. § 33.

*our(s)*, noster, -ra, -rum.

*out of*, e, ex, Prep. + Abl.

*outside*, extra, Prep. + Acc.

*ourselves*, nos ips-i, -ae.

*overcome*, supero (1).

*overthrow*, e-vert-o, -ēre, -i, -versum (3).

*owe*, debeo (2).

*own*: *my own*, meus; *your own*, tuus; *his, her, their own*, suus.

*pain*, dol-or, -oris, m.

*panic*, pavor, -oris, m.

*pardon*, Vb. ig-nosc-o, -ēre, -novi, -notum (3). Dat. § 8.

*pardon*, Noun, veni-a, -ae, f.

*parent*, par-ens, par-ent-is.

*part*, pars, part-is, f.

*pass* (i.e. *go by*), praeter-eo, -ire, -ivi, -itum [Compound of *eo*]; *pass* (*life*), ago, -ēre, egi, actum (3).

*passage*, transit-us, -ūs, m.

*paternal*, patern-us, -a, -um.

*pay*, sol-vo, -vēre, -vi, -utum (3).

*pay-attention*, operam do, dare, dedi, datum.

*peace*, pax, pac-is, f.

*penalty*, poen-a, -ae, f.

*people* (i.e. *a nation*), popul-us, -i, m.

*perceive*, senti-o, -re, sens-i, sensum (4); intellig-o, -ēre, -lexi, -lectum (3).

*peril*, periculum, -i, n.

*perish*, pere-o, perire, perii, peritum. Compound of *eo*. L.P. 102.

*permission*, veni a, -ae, f.

*permit*, permitt-o, -ēre, -misi, -missum (3).

*perpetual*, perpetu-us, -a, -um.

*persuade*, per-suade-o, -re, -suas-i, -suas-um. Dat. § 8, § 76.

*Piso*, -nis, m.

*pitch*, pon-o, -ēre, posu-i, positum (3).

*pity*, misere-or, -ri, Dep. (2), § 7; miseret, Impers. § 30.

*place*, Vb. pon-o, -ēre, posu-i, positum (3); Noun, loc-us, -i, m.

*plain*, campus, -i, m.

*plan*, consili-um, -i, n.

*pleasant*, jucund-us, -a, -um.

*pleasing*, grat-us, -a, -um.

*pleasure*, volup-tas, -tat-is, f.

*plough*, aratrum, -i, n.

*plunder*, Vb. praedor. Dep. (1).

*plundering*, Noun, popula-tio, -tionis, f., or Gerund of praedor, Dep. (1).

*poet*, poet-a, -ae, m.

*point out*, demonstro (1).

*poison*, venen-um, -i, n.

*Pompei-us*, -i, m.

*Pont-us*, -i, m.

*poor*, pauper, pauper-is. L.P. 47.

*popularity*, gratia, -ae, f.

*possession*, get, poti-or, potiri, potitus. Dep. (4). Abl. § 9.

*possible*, as, quam + Superl.: quam celerrime = *as quickly as possible*. § 102, *d. it is possible*, fieri potest ut. § 66.

*power*, potest-as, -tat-is, f.

*praise*, Vb. laudo, lauda-re (1);

Noun, laus, laud-is, f.

*pray*, precor, precari, precatus. Dep. (1). § 76.

*prefer* (followed by Infin.) mal-o, malle, malu-i. L.P. 104. (followed by Nouns), antepono, -ēre, -posui, -positum. *I prefer* (Acc.) to (Dat.)

*prepare*, paro, par-are (1). § 39.

*presence*, in the - of, coram, Prep. + Abl.

*present*, am, ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fui.

*present*, dono (1). § 48.

*preserve*, servo, serva-re (1).

*press*, prem-o, -ēre, pressi, pressum (3).

*prevail*, valeo (2).

*prevent*, impedio (4). § 118, 119.

*previous*, superior, -is.

*previously*, prius.

*price*, preti-um, -i, n.

*pride*, superbi-a, -ae, f.

*prison*, carcer, -is, m.

*proclaim*, judico, judic-are (1).

*proconsul*, procons-ul, -ulis, m.

*promise*, pollice-or, -ri, pollicit-us. Dep. (2). § 65, f.

*prompted*, adduct-us. Participle of adduco.

*prosperity*, res secundae, pl. f.

*protect*, tueor, tuēri, tuitus. Dep. (2).

*prove*, prae-sto, -sta-re, -stit-i, -stitum (1).

*provided*, dummodo. § 95, d.

*province*, provinci-a, -ae, f.

*prudence*, prudenti-a, -ae, f.

*punish*, puni-o (4).

*punishment*, poen-a, -ae, f.

*purpose*, consili-um, -i, n.

*on purpose*, de industria.

*pursue*, sequ-or, -i, secut-us. Dep. (3).

*put to flight*, in fugam conjicio.

*queen*, regin-a, -ae, f.

*question*, Vb. interrogo (1).

*quickly*, celeriter.

*quite-ready*, Superlative of paratus, -a, -um.

*race*, genus, generis, n.

*raft*, rat-is, -is, f.

*rain*, imber, imbris, m.

*raise*, toll-o, -ēre, sustul-i, sublat-um.

*ram*, ari-es, -etis, m.

*rampart*, vall-um, -i, n.

*rank*, ordo, ordin-is, m.

*rashly*, temeriter.

*rather*, potius; *would-rather*, malo, malle, malui. § 5.

*ravage*, vasto (1).

*reach*, per-veni-o, -re, -veni, -vent-um (4); with ad + Acc.

*read*, lēg-o, -ēre, lēgi, lect-um (3).

*ready*, parat-us, -a, -um.

*reality*, in, re vera. § 42.

*reap*, meto, -ēre, messui, messum (3).

*rear guard*, novissimum agmen, n.

*reason*, caus-a, -ae, f.

*receive*, accipi-o, -cipēre, -cep-i, -cept-um (3). L.P. 98.

*recently*, nuper.

*reckon*, putc, puta-re (1).

*reckon*, habeo (2).

*recollection*, memori-a, -ae, f.

*recover*, recip-i-o, -cip-ēre, -cep-i, -cept-um (3). L.P. 98.

*redeem*, redim-o, -ēre, redemi, redempt-um (3).

*reduce*, redig-o, -ēre, redēg-i, redact-um (3).

*refer*, refer-o, referre, rettul-i, relat-um. L.P. 101.

*refuse*, nego (1); Acc. and Infin.

*region*, regio, region-is, f.

*rejoice*, gaude-o, -re, gavisus sum (2). Semi-Dep. § 67, 74.

*rely*, con-fid-o, -ēre, -fīsus sum (3). Semi-Dep. § 46.

*relying*, fret-us, -a, -um. + Abl. § 46.

*remain*, mane-o, -re, mans-i, mans-um (2).

*Rem-i*, -orum, 2nd Decl. pl.

*remaining* (= the rest), reliqu-i, -ae, -a.

*render*, redd-o, -ēre, reddid-i, reddit-um (3).

*renew*, redintegro (1).

*repair*, refic-i-o, -fic-ēre, -fec-i, -fect-um (3). L.P. 98.

*repent*, poenitet. § 30.

*reply*, re-sponde-o, -re, -spond-i, -sponsum (2).

*report*, Noun, fama, -ae, f. Verb, trad-o, -ēre, -id-i, -it-um (3);

(bring back news), reuntio (1).

*republic*, respublica, reipublicae. L.P.

*repulse*, re-pell-o, -ēre, -pūl-i, -puls-um (3).

*rescue*, erip-i-o, erip-ēre, eripu-i, erept-um (3).

*resign*, abdicō (1): with Reflexive + Abl.; e.g. abdicare se magis-tratu.

*resist*, re-sist-o, -ēre, -stiti, -stitum (3). Dat. § 8.

*resolve*, constitu-o, -ēre, -i, -tum (3). § 5.

*rest* (the), reliqu-us, -a, -um. § 45, a.

*restore* (= rebuild), re-stitu-o, -ēre, -i, -tum (3).

*restrain*, prohibe-o (2), § 41; retineo (2).

*retire*, re-gredior, -gredi, -gressus. Dep. (3). L.P. 98.

*retreat*, pedem referre, rettul-i, relat-um; re-cip-i-o, -ēre, -cepi,



-ceptum (3), with Reflexive Pron.  
*return* (Intr. = *go back*), red-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum. L.P. 102. (Trans. *give back*), red-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum (3).  
*return*, Noun, redit-us, ūs, m.  
*reward*, praemi-um, -i, n.  
*Rhine*, Rhen-us, -i, m.  
*Rhone*, Rhodan-us, -i, m.  
*rich*, dives, divitis. L.P. 47.  
*right* (on the), dextra, or a dextra.  
*rightly* (i.e. *correctly*), rite; (*deservedly*), jure.  
*ripe*, matur-us, -a, -um.  
*rise*, co-orior, -oriri, coortus sum. Dep. (4).  
*river*, flumen, flumin-is, n.  
*road*, vi-a, -ae, f.  
*robber*, latro, -nis, m.  
*robe*, vest-is, -is, f.  
*Roman*, Roman-us, -a, -um.  
*Rome*, Rom-a, -ae, f.  
*Romul-us*, -i, m.  
*roof*, tect-um, -i, n.  
*Rosci-us*, -i, m.  
*route*, iter, itiner-is, n.  
*rumour*, rumor, -is, m.  
*run down*, decurr-o, -ēre, decurr-i, decurs-um (3).  
*run forward*, procurro (3).  
  
*sacred*, sanct-us, -a, -um.  
*sad*, trist-is, -e.  
*safe* (*protected*), tut-us, -a, -um; (*unhurt*), incolum-is, -e.  
*safety*, salus, salut-is, f.  
*Sagunt-um*, -i, n. (town).  
*sail, set* (i.e. *start*), solv-o, -ēre, -i, solut-um (3).  
*sail* (i.e. *travel by sea*), navigo (1).  
*sailor*, naut-a, -ae, m.  
*sake* (*for the*), causā, gratiā. § 44.  
*same*, idem, eadem, idem. § 103. L.P. 64.  
*savage*, fer-us, -a, -um.  
*save*, servo, serva-re (1).  
*say*, dic-o, -ēre, dix-i, dict-um (3).  
*scarcely*, vix.  
*scarcity*, inopi-a, -ae, f.  
*Scipio*, -nis, m.  
*sea*, mare, mar-is, n.

*second*, secund-us, -a, -um.  
*secretly*, furtim.  
*see*, vide-o, -re, vid-i, vis-um (2).  
*seek*, pet-o, -ēre, peti-i, petit-um.  
*seem*, vide-or, -ri, vis-us sum (2). § 11.  
*Sequan-i*, -orum.  
*seize* (i.e. *snatch*), rap-i-o, -ēre, rapu-i, rapt-um (3), L.P. 98; (*a town, land*, etc.), occupo (1).  
*sell*, vend-o, -ēre, -idi, -itum (3).  
*senate*, senat-us, ūs, m.  
*send*, mitt-o, -ēre, mis-i, miss-um (3).  
*send round*, di-mitto, -ēre, etc.  
*send forward*, prae-mitt-o, -ēre, etc.  
*sentinel*, custos, custod-is, m.  
*serious*, grav-is, -e.  
*seriously*, graviter.  
*services*, merit-a, -orum, n.  
*set out*, proficisc-or, -i, profectus sum. Dep. (3).  
*set sail*, solv-o, ēre, -i, solut-um (3).  
*seventh*, septim-us, -a, -um.  
*several*, complures. Neut. -a; Gen. -ium. Plur. Adj.  
*severe*, grav-is, -e.  
*sharpen*, acu-o, ēre, -i, -tum (3).  
*shatter*, frang-o, -ēre, freg-i, fract-um (3).  
*shield*, scut-um, -i, n.  
*ship*, nav-is, -is, f.  
*shore*, lit-us, -ōris, n.  
*short*, brevis, -e.  
*should*. See § 33.  
*shout* (Noun), clamor, -is, m. Verb, clamo (1).  
*show*, ostend-o, -ēre, -ī, ostens-um (3); (*oneself*), praebe-o (2), with Reflexive.  
*shut*, claud-o, -ēre, claus-i, claus-um (3).  
*Sicily*, Sicili-a, -ae, f.  
*sick*, aeg-er, -ra, rum.  
*side*, latus, lateris, n.; (*on* (or *from*) *every side*, undique).  
*siege*, obsidi-o, -onis, f.  
*sight*, conspect-us, ūs, m.  
*signal*, sign-um, -i, n.  
*silent*, tacit-us, -a, -um.  
*similar*, simil-is, -e.  
*since*. § 86, 96.  
*sing*, can-o, -ēre, cecin-i, cant-um (3).

*sink*, merg-o, -ĕre, mersi, mersum (3). Transit. See § 3.  
*sister*, soror, soror-is, f.  
*sit*, sede-o, -re, sed-i, sess-um (2).  
*skilled*, } perit-us, -a, -um. § 42.  
*skilful*, }  
*slaughter*, caed-ēs, -is, f.  
*slave*, serv-us, -i, m.  
*slavery*, servit-us, -ut-is, f.  
*slay*, occid-o, -ĕre, -i, occis-um (3).  
*small*, parv-us, -a, -um.  
*smoke*, fum-us, -i, m.  
*snow*, nix, niv-is, f.  
*so*, sic, ita, tam. See § 103.  
*so great*, tant-us, -a, -um.  
*so long*, tamdiu. (Adv.)  
*so many*, tot (indecl. Adj.)  
*so often*, toties.  
*Socrates*, Socrat-es, -is, m.  
*soldier*, miles, milit-is, m.  
*some*, somebody, something, etc. § 51.  
*some*. . . others, alii. . . alii.  
*son*, fili-us, -i, m.  
*song*, carmen, carmin-is, n.  
*soon*, mox. Adv.  
*sorrow*, dolor, -is, m.  
*sorrowful*, trist-is, -e.  
*sort*, what—of, qual-is, -e.  
*sortie*, eruptio, -onis, f.  
*sought*, Aorist of 'seek.'  
*soul*, anim-us, -i, m.  
*Spain*, Hispani-a, -ae, f.  
*spare*, parc-o, -ĕre, peperc-i, parsum and parcitum (3).  
*speak*, loqu-or, -i, locut-us sum. Dep. (3).  
*spear*, hast-a, -ae, f.  
*speech*, oratio, oration-is, f.  
*speed*, celerit-as, -at-is, f.  
*spend*, con-sum-o, -ĕre, -sumpsi, -sumpt-um (3).  
*spite*, in — of. See § 43.  
*spring down*, desili-o, -re, desilu-i, desult-um (4).  
*spy*, explorator, -is, m.  
*stand*, sto, sta-re, stet-i, stat-um (1). (= endure), sustine-o (2).  
*standard*, sign-um, -i, n.  
*standard-bearer*, aquilifer, -i, m.  
*stand round*, circum-sto, -stare, -steti (1).

*start*, proficisc-or, -i, profect-us sum. Dep. (3).  
*state*, civit-as, -at-is, f.  
*stay*, moror. Dep. (1).  
*still*, adhuc. Adv.  
*stone*, lapis, lapid-is, m.; sax-um, -i, n.  
*storm*, Noun, tempest-as, -at-is, f. Verb, expugno (1).  
*stratagem*, fraus, fraudis, f.  
*strength*, vires, virium, viribus, pl. of vis, f. L.P. 28.  
*stricken*, perterrit-us, -a, -um. *strive*. § 73, 76.  
*strong*, valid-us, -a, -um.  
*study*, stude-o (2). Dat.  
*stupid*, stult-us, -a, -um.  
*succour*, suc-curr-o, -ĕre, -i, -cursum (3). Dat. § 8.  
*such*, tal-is, -e. Adj. (like tristis); but when 'such' = 'so great' use tantus. § 82, 103.  
*suddenly*, subito.  
*suffer*, pat-i-or, pati, pass-us sum. Dep. (3). L.P. 98.  
*sufficient*, satis.  
*suitable*, idone-us, -a, -um.  
*summer*, aestas, -tatis, f.  
*summon*, arcess-o, -ĕre, -ivi, -itum (3).  
*sun*, sol, solis, m.  
*sunset*, solis occasus, -ūs, m.  
*supper*, coen-a, -ae, f.  
*suppose*, existimo (1).  
*surely*. See § 59.  
*surpass*, supero (1).  
*surprise*, op-primo, -ĕre, -pressi, -pressum (3).  
*surrender*, ded-o, -ĕre, -id-i, -it-um (3).  
*surround*, (with a thing) cing-o, -ĕre, cinxi, cinctum (3); circum-do (1). § 48. (with persons) circumveni-o, -re, -veni, -ventum.  
*survive*, super-sum, -esse, -fui, Dat.  
*suspicion*, suspic-io, -ionis, f.  
*sustain*, sustine-o, -re (2).  
*sweet*, dulc-is, -e.  
*swift*, velox, veloc-is.  
*sword*, gladi-us, -i, m.

*table*, mensa, -ae, f.

*tackle*, armamenta, -orum, n. 2nd Decl. pl.  
*take*, cap-i-o, -ĕre, cep-i, capt-um (3). L.P. 98.  
*take away*, aufero, auferre, abstuli, ablatum. § 41. adim-o, -ĕre, adem-i, adempt-um (3).  
*take care*. § 76.  
*take-part in*, inter-sum, -esse, -fui. Dat.  
*take-place*, fio, fieri, factus sum.  
*take to flight*, fugam peto, -ĕre, -ivi, -itum (3).  
*take up*, sum-o, -ĕre, sumps-i, sumpt-um (3).  
*Tarentum*, -i, n. (town).  
*task*, negoti-um, -i, n.  
*teach*, doce-o, -re, docu-i, doct-um (2).  
*tear*, lacrim-a, -ae, f.  
*tell*, dic-o, -ĕre, dix-i, dict-um (3).  
*temple*, templ-um, -i, n.  
*ten*, decem.  
*tender*, ten-er, -era, -erum.  
*tenth*, decim-us, -a, -um.  
*term(s)* conditio, -nis, f.  
*terrify*, terre-o, -re (2).  
*territories*, } fin-es, -ium, m. 3rd  
*territory*, } Decl. pl.  
*terror*, timor, timoris, m.  
*than*, quam or Abl. of Comp. p. 50.  
*thank*, Vb. ago gratias.  
*thanks*, gratiae, -arum, f. 1st Dec. pl.  
*that*, Demonstr. Adj. is, ea, id. L.P. 63.  
*that*, Conjunction after *say*, *think*, § 61.  
 „ after *beg*, *pray*, etc., § 73.  
 „ = *in order that*, § 77.  
 „ after *such*, *so*, § 81.  
 „ Relative Pron. = *who*, *which*, etc., § 105.  
*their*. § 53.  
*them*, Cases of is, ea, id [or se. § 52].  
*Themistocle-s*, -is, m.  
*themselves*. § 52.  
*then*, tum.  
*there*, ibi. 'There is,' 'there are,' see Ex. 4.  
*therefore*, igitur.  
*these*, plur. of hic, haec, hoc.  
*thick*, dens-us, -a, -um.

*thing*, res, rei, f., or neut. Adj.: *many things* = multa.  
*think*, arbitror, Dep. (1); reor, reri, ratus, Dep. (2); (= *reckon*) puto (1).  
*third*, terti-us, -a, -um.  
*thirteen*, tredecim (indecl.)  
*this*, hic, haec, hoc.  
*thither*, eo, Adv.  
*those*, pl. of is, ea, id, or ille.  
*thou*, tu. L.P. 61.  
*though*, quanquam, etsi, quamvis. § 98.  
*thousand*, mille. See Ex. 44; 1000 times, millies.  
*threat*, min-ae, -arum, f.  
*threaten*, minor, minari, minatus. Dep. (1). Dat. § 8.  
*three*, tres, tria. L.P. 58.  
*throne*, regn-um, -i, n.  
*through*, per, Prep. + Acc.  
*throw*, con-jic-i-o, -ĕre, -jec-i, -ject-um (3).  
*throw away*, ab-jic-i-o, -ĕre, -jec-i, -ject-um. L.P. 98.  
*throw into confusion*, perturbo (1).  
*thus*, sic, ita.  
*thy*, thine, tu-us, -a, -um.  
*till* (Prep.) ad; Conj. § 91.  
*timber*, materi-es, -ei, f.  
*time*, tempus, temporis, n.  
*timid*, timid-us, -a, -um.  
*to*. Preposition. § 47. = *in order to*. § 79, a. *Beg*, *command to*. § 75, a. *Such*, *so* . . . *as to*. § 23, a.  
*to-day*, hodie.  
*tolerably*, mediocriter.  
*too*. See § 83, g. 114, c.  
*too* = also, etiam.  
*top*, summ-us, -a, -um. § 45, a.  
*torture*, cruciat-us, -ūs, m.  
*touch*, tang-o, -ĕre, tetigi, tactum (3).  
*tower*, turr-is, -is, f.  
*town*, oppid-um, -i, n.  
*townsman*, oppidan-us, -i, m.  
*transfix*, trans-fig-o, -ĕre, -fixi, -fixum (3).  
*travel*, iter fac-i-o, fac-ĕre, fec-i, factum (= *I make a journey*).  
*treachery*, fraus, fraud-is, f.  
*Trebi-a*, ae, f.  
*trial*, judici-um, -i, n.

*tribune*, tribun-us, -i, m.  
*tribute*, stipendium, -i, n.  
*triumph*, triumpho (1).  
*trouble*, negoti-um, -i, n.  
*troublesome*, molest-us, -a, -um.  
*Troy*, Troja, -ae (town).  
*true*, ver-us, -a, -um.  
*trumpet*, tub-a, -ae, f.  
*trust*, confid-o, -ĕre, confisus sum.  
 Semi-Dep. (3). Dat. or Abl. § 42.  
*try*, conor, cona-ri, conat-us sum.  
 Dep. (1). Prolat. Infĭn.  
*Tulli-a*, -ae, f.  
*tumult*, tumult-us, -ūs, m.  
*turn*, con-vert-o, -ĕre, -i, -versum (3).  
*Tuscul-um*, -i (town), n.  
*twenty*, viginti (indecl.).  
*twenty-first*, unus et vicensimus.  
*twice*, bis.  
*two*, duo, duae, duo.  
*tyrant*, tyrann-us, -i, m.

*unable*. Use *non* with *possum*.  
*unarmed*, inerm-is, -e.  
*uncertain*, incert-us, -a, -um.  
*undergo*, sub-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum.  
 L.P. 102.  
*understand*, intel-lig-o, -ĕre, -lexi, -lectum (3).  
*undertake*, sus-cip-i-o, -ĕre, -cepi, -cept-um (3). L.P. 98.  
*unfriendly*, inimic-us, -a, -um.  
*ungrateful*, ingrāt-us, -a, -um.  
*unhurt*, incolum-is, -e.  
*unless*, nisi. § 93, 94.  
*unmindful*, immemor, -is.  
*unskilled*, imperit-us, -a, -um.  
 (Genit.)  
*until*. See *till*.  
*untouched*, integ-er, -ra, -rum.  
*unwilling*, *am*, nolo, nolle, nolui.  
 L.P. 104.  
*unworthy*, indign-us, -a, -um, Abl. § 45, d.  
*upon*, in, Prep. + Acc. or Abl. § 42.  
*us*, nos. Pl. of ego. L.P. 61.  
*use*, Vb. ntor, uti, usus sum. Dep. (3).  
 Abl. § 9. Noun, usus, -ūs, m. § 11.  
*useful*, util-is, -e.  
*usual*, solit-us, -a, -um.  
*utmost*, summ-us, -a, -um.

*valley*, vall-is, -is, f.  
*valour*, virtus, virtu tis, f.  
*value*, aestimo (1). § 37.  
*various*, vari-us, -a, -um.  
*vast*, ingens, ingentis.  
*vehemently*, vehementer.  
*Veii*, Veiorum (town), m. pl.  
*venture*, aude-o, -re, ausus sum.  
 Semi-Dep. (2).  
*Verr-es*, -is, m.  
*very*, sign of Superlative degree: the *very* place, ipse locus.  
*vexatious*, molestus, -a, -um.  
*vexed*, *am*, taedet. § 30.  
*victim*, victim-a, -ae, f.  
*victory*, victori-a, -ae, f.  
*victorious*, victor, -toris, m.  
*vigorously*, acriter.  
*village*, vic-us, -i, m.  
*vine*, vit-is, -is, f.  
*violate*, violo (1).  
*violence*, vis, vim, Abl. vi, f.  
*voice*, vox, voc-is, f.  
*vote (at an election)*, suffragi-um, -i, n.; (*in the senate or at a trial*), sententi-a, -ae, f.

*wage*, ger-o, -ĕre, gessi, gestum (3).  
*wait*, or *wait for*, exspecto (1). § 40.  
*wall*, mur-us, -i, m.; moeni-a, -orum, n.  
*want*, inopi-a, -ae, f.  
*wanting*, *am*, desum, -esse, -fui.  
*war*, bell-um, -i, n.; *make war on*, bellum infero + Dat.  
*warn*, moneo (2). § 75.  
*waste*, vasto (1).  
*watch*, vigili-a, -ae, f.  
*water*, aqu-a, -ae, f.  
*way (i.e. manner)*, modus, -i. § 42.  
*wave*, fluct-us, -ūs, m.  
*we*, nos, pl. of ego. L.P. 61.  
*wealth*, divitiæ, -arum, f. pl.  
*weapon*, tel-um, -i, n.  
*weariness*, lassitud-o, -inis, f.  
*weary*, fessus, -a, -um. See also § 30, taedet.  
*weather*, tempest-as, -at-is, f.  
*well*, bene.  
*went*. See *go*.  
*what*, Interrog. Subst. quid; Adj. qui, quae, quod.

- what*, Relative, quod, sing., quae, pl. § 107, *d*.
- whatever*, quicumque, quaecunque, quodcunque.
- wheel*, rot-a, -ae, f.
- when*, Temp. Conjunct. cum, ubi. § 90. Interrog. quando. § 71, *d*.
- whence*, unde, Interrog. and Relat. Adv.
- where*, ubi, Interrog. and Relat.
- whether*, Interrog. see § 71, *g*, *h*. Condit. see § 92.
- which*, Relative, qui, quae, quod. § 106.
- which?* Interrog. (quis), quid, Subst.; qui, quae, quod, Adj. *which of two*, uter, ultra, utrum.
- while*, for a long, diu.
- white*, alb-us, -a, -um.
- whither*, quo. Interrog. and Relative Adverb.
- who?* Interrog. quis, quid. L. P. 66.
- who*, Rel. qui, quae (quod). § 106.
- whoever*, quicumque, quaecunque, quodcunque.
- whole*, tot-us, -a, -um.
- whose*, Genit. of quis (Interrog.) or qui (Relat.).
- why*, cur, quam-ob-rem.
- wicked*, improb-us, -a, -um.
- wickedness*, scel-us, -eris, n.
- wide*, lat-us, -a, -um.
- width*, lati-tudo, -tudinis, f.
- wife*, uxor, uxoris, f.
- wild beast*, fer-a, -ae, f.
- will*, volunt-as, -atis, f.
- willing*, am, volo, velle, volu-i. L. P. 104.
- win*, nancisc-or, -i, nactus. Dep. (3).
- wind*, vent-us, -i, m.
- wing* (of army), cornu, -us, n.
- winter*, hiems, hiem-is, f.
- winter-quarters*, hibern-a, -orum, n. pl., 2nd Decl.
- wisdom*, sapienti-a, -ae, f.
- wise*, sapi-ens, -ent-is.
- wish*, volo, velle, volu-i. L.P. 104. *against my wish*, me invito: lit. *I being unwilling*.
- with*. See § 48.
- within*, intra, Prep. + Acc.
- without*, sine, Prep. + Abl. See § 49.
- witness*, test-is, -is, c.
- woman*, mulier, -is, f.
- wonder*, miror. Dep. (1).
- wood*, silv-a, -ae, f.
- word*, verbum, -i, n.
- work*, opus, oper-is, n.
- world*, *where in the*, ubinam or ubi gentium.
- worn-out*, confect-us, -a, -um.
- worthy*, dign-us, -a, -um, Abl. § 46.
- would*. See § 33.
- would have*, § 64, 70 N.B. iii., 83 (c).
- wound*, Vb., vulnero, vulnerare. Noun, vulnus, vulner-is, n.
- wretched*, miser, -a, -um.
- write*, scrib-o, -ère, scrips-i, scriptum (3).
- write out*, perscribo (3)
- wrong*, injuria, -ae, f.
- year*, annus, -i, m.
- yet*, (= however) tamen; (= up to this time) adhuc.
- yonder*, ille, illa, illud.
- you*, tu, sing.; vos, pl. L.P. 61.
- your*, (addressing one person) tuus; (more than one) vester.
- yourself*, tu ipse.
- youth*, (= a young man) juven-is, -is, m.; (period of youth) juven-us, -utis, f.
- young*, juven-is, -e.
- zeal*, studium, -i, n.



# INDEX OF SUBJECTS

---

- Ablative, § 9, 37, 38, 45  
Ablative Absolute, Ex. 74, 75, § 21  
Accusative and Infinitive, Ex. 71, 105, § 61  
Adjectival Clauses, Ex. 60, 61, 62, 89, 90, § 106  
Adverbial Clauses: *see* Table of Contents  
Agent, Ex. 36, § 38
- Causal Clauses, § 85  
Cause, § 37, 38, 41-45  
Circumstance, § 37, 38  
Command, Direct, Ex. 57, 58, § 56.  
Indirect, Ex. 73, § 73-76  
Comparative Clauses, Ex. 70, 103, § 100, 104  
Complement, § 11  
Concessive Clauses, Ex. 69, 102, § 97-99  
Conditional Clauses, Ex. 68, 100, 101, § 92-96  
Consecutive Clauses, Ex. 64, 94, § 81-84  
Copulative Verb, Ex. 38, 48, § 5
- Dative, § 8, 39, 47, 48
- Factitive Verb, Ex. 37, § 5  
Final Clauses, Ex. 63, 93, § 77-80
- Genitive, § 7, 13 *a*, 44  
Gerund and Gerundive, Ex. 76-78, § 25-27
- Impersonals, Ex. 79, 80, § 30  
Indirect Command, Ex. 73, 108, § 73
- Indirect Question, Ex. 72, 107, § 68  
Indirect Statement, Ex. 71, 105, 106, § 61  
Instrument, Ex. 36, § 38  
Interrogative, Ex. 54, § 58  
Ipse, § 52
- Manner, § 37, 38, 42
- Negatives, Ex. 84, § 54  
Num, nonne, -ne, Ex. 55, § 58
- Oratio Obliqua, Ex. 111-115  
Origin, § 41
- Participles, Ex. 49, 81, 82, § 17  
Partitive, § 44  
Place, § 36  
Possessive Adj., Ex. 45, 51  
Prolative, Ex. 47, § 5
- Quality, § 44  
Quam, Ex. 60  
Question (Direct), Ex. 54, 55, § 58  
Question (Indirect), Ex. 72, 107, § 68-72  
Quin and Quominus, Ex. 95, § 117-119
- Se and Suus, § 52, 53, 131  
Separation, § 41  
Space, § 35  
Suboblique, Ex. 85, 110, § 123
- Temporal Clauses, Ex. 66, 98, 99, § 89-91  
Time, § 34

PRINTED BY  
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE  
LONDON









